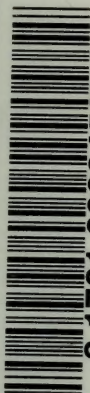


GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

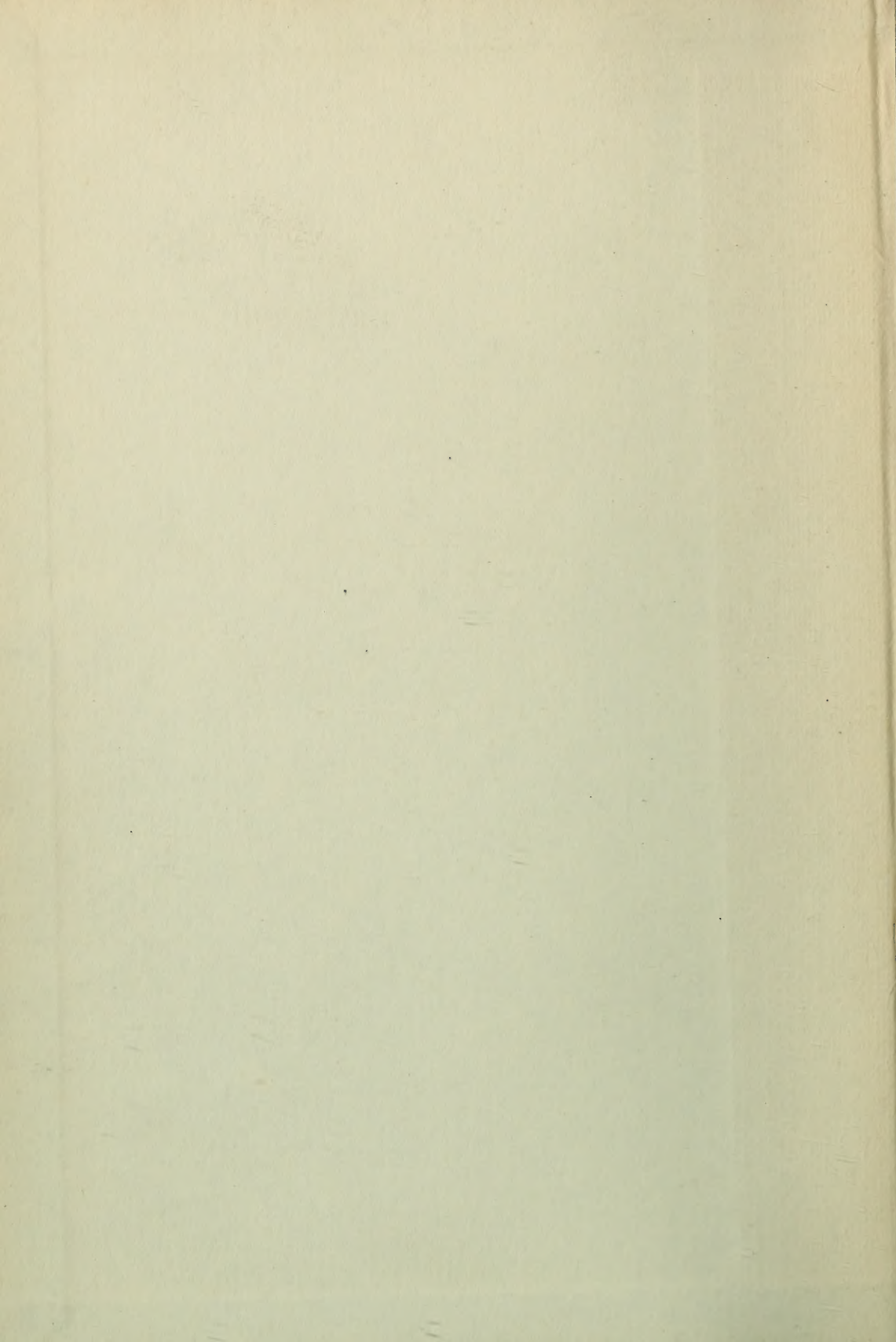


3 1761 08824535 2


# LATIN COMPOSITION

GILDERSLEEVE  
LODGE





John Hekker



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
University of Toronto









GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

LaL.Gr  
G4685kx.2

# LATIN COMPOSITION

BY

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY

AND

GONZALEZ LODGE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK IN COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

[REVISED  
ed.]

DEPARTMENTAL  
LIBRARY

182219

7.7.23.

[1904]

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS  
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO



COPYRIGHT, 1899 AND 1904. BY  
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY  
1 J 5



## PREFACE

THIS manual consists of two parts. In the first part, which is an expansion of Gildersleeve's Latin Exercise Book, the student is practised in the various forms of the subordinate sentence; in the second part he has to deal with continuous composition.

In both divisions the exercises are divided into fifteen groups of four, arranged in the first part according to the topics of study; in the second part, according to the degree of difficulty. The object of this division is to make it easy for the teacher to use the book through four successive years without repeating. In most schools thirty exercises will occupy a full year: this book contains one hundred and twenty.

The passages are frankly translated or adapted from accepted Latin models. The more arduous and more perilous attempt to think English directly into Latin is reserved for a more advanced stage, but it is hoped that the incidental hints given in this book will be of some service to those who are preparing for higher achievement and more complete mastery.

The notes are intended to stimulate thought rather than to help the student mechanically over difficult places. Hence in many instances they also serve as exercises and involve close grammatical study.

The senior collaborator has furnished the greater part of

the material; for the remainder, as well as for the notes, the vocabulary, and the arrangement, the junior collaborator is responsible.

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE.

GONZALEZ LODGE.

BALTIMORE AND BRYN MAWR, *August 1, 1899.*

---

IN the preparation of this new edition of the Latin Composition the authors are under especial obligations to Professor Charles N. Cole of Oberlin College, who has made many additions to the Notes of the First Part, and to the Vocabulary, which has been enlarged by the inclusion of all the proper names in the text. Professor Cole has also furnished the references to the new editions of the grammars cited and has thus greatly facilitated the use of the book.

In the Second Part a new Exercise has been substituted for No. 115, and a number of errors corrected.

B. L. G.

G. L.

NEW YORK, *May 1, 1904.*



# LATIN COMPOSITION

## FIRST PART

### SYSTEMATIC EXERCISES

## GENERAL DIRECTIONS

THE student should read carefully the sections of the Grammar given at the beginning of every set of exercises, and should not begin writing until familiar with all the phenomena of the constructions covered by the exercise. In the introduction to every set of exercises attention is also drawn to those peculiarities which are apt to escape the notice of students, and these should be carefully studied. Further information is given in the notes, the grammatical references in which are collected at the end of the book.

The references in the headings are to Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar, larger edition (1894), and to the grammars of Allen and Greenough (with references to the new edition of 1903 in parenthesis), Bennett, Hale and Buck, Harkness (1898), Lane, and West; the references in the notes are to Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar exclusively.



## 1. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

G. 450-470 ; A. & G. 210-212, 334 (330-337, 573-576) ; B. 162, 300 ; H. 378-380, 649-651 ; H. & B. 231-237, 507 (2), 537 ; L. 1499-1533, 1773-1791 ; W. 280, 281, 590-595.

In Direct Questions attention must be paid to the Interrogative Particles and their position in the sentence ; to the incomplete sentences introduced by *an* ; to phrases with *an* with an affirmative force (457, 2).

In Indirect Questions notice especially the use of *si* after verbs of Trial, expressed or implied. Observe also the use of the Moods, and those phraseological expressions which have the force of an interrogative but do not affect the Mood (467, R. 1 and N.).

## A.

1. 1. Is there any one of all mankind<sup>1</sup> about whom you have a better opinion?<sup>2</sup> 2. Were not the wretches compelled to pay down the money? 3. Did Hannibal carry on war against the Romans from<sup>3</sup> hate? Was his hatred unjust? 4. You will not be able to say that there was nothing in that letter to<sup>4</sup> injure Verres, will you? 5. All wicked men are slaves; or is he free who is a slave<sup>5</sup> to his lusts? 6. Have your forces been diminished or theirs increased? 7. When I get<sup>6</sup> to Rome and find out what the business<sup>7</sup> is, I will write to you at what<sup>8</sup> time I shall return. 8. Write me whether Clodia was alive or dead when her son died. 9. Urged by famine and want the soldiers went secretly out of camp to try<sup>9</sup> if they could find anything to<sup>4</sup> eat in the fields. 10. I am disposed to think he will turn his wife out of doors. 11. It may be that I did not understand you. 12. They took counsel in what way the enemy was to be met.<sup>10</sup> 13. He hesitated a short time whether he should turn his march into Noricum. 14. What was<sup>11</sup> I to answer? 15. It is extraordinary what an amount of labor men spend on trifles. 16. With what genius are you endowed that<sup>12</sup> you hope to<sup>13</sup> obtain the highest honors in the state? 17. He came early in the morning. For what purpose?<sup>14</sup> 18. The senate said that they did not see any reason<sup>15</sup> at all why the welfare of the state should be intrusted to soldiers who had deserted their comrades in battle.

<sup>1</sup> *mortalis*. <sup>2</sup> Use *existimare* and see 631, 2. <sup>3</sup> For the position of the particle, see 678, R. 5. <sup>4</sup> 631, 2. <sup>5</sup> Use verb. <sup>6</sup> What is the real time of get? see 244, R. 2. <sup>7</sup> 369. <sup>8</sup> 416, 1; 467, R. 2. <sup>9</sup> Remember that the verb of Trial (460, 1, *b*) is usually omitted. <sup>10</sup> 217 and 467. <sup>11</sup> 466. <sup>12</sup> 469. <sup>13</sup> A verb of Hoping is a verb of Thinking (527, R. 2); be careful then of the tense. <sup>14</sup> Use *facere* and see 470. <sup>15</sup> *nihil videre*.

## B.

2. 1. Did you not say that this was a good man? 2. Is the science of war nothing because a great commander sometimes runs? 3. Is the nature of the whole business different<sup>1</sup> now from what it was then? 4. You remember those magnificent temples which you saw in Italy? or perhaps you are too young to<sup>2</sup> remember them. 5. Is the world governed by the providence of God or by chance? 6. I want<sup>3</sup> you to write me under what consuls<sup>4</sup> Clodius was Tribune of the People. 7. He asked whether he was accustomed to walk on<sup>5</sup> his hands. 8. What difference does it make whether I come now or ten years hence<sup>6</sup>? 9. The general began to reconnoitre to see<sup>7</sup> whether he could attack the enemy in<sup>8</sup> the rear. 10. I am inclined to think that Hannibal was more wonderful in adversity than in prosperity. 11. They did not know what to seek<sup>9</sup> or what to avoid. 12. Should<sup>10</sup> you not have replied that that could not happen unless the government were overthrown<sup>11</sup>? 13. Endymion fell asleep some time or other in Latmus. 14. There was a dispute as to whether the war should be declared<sup>9</sup> by order of the people or whether a decree of the senate was sufficient. 15. It is past belief how much I surpass my master in good sense. 16. You know what a troublesome creature Peter is. 17. I am going to bed. For what purpose?<sup>12</sup> 18. Hieronymus asked the Roman ambassadors what had<sup>13</sup> been the fortune of the day at Cannae; for what the ambassadors of Hannibal told him was scarcely credible; he wished to know what was the truth<sup>14</sup> in order to determine which side to take.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *alius*; 643 and N. 3. <sup>2</sup> 298. <sup>3</sup> 257, 2; *volo* is too peremptory. <sup>4</sup> 469. <sup>5</sup> 'on' is 'by.' <sup>6</sup> 416, I. <sup>7</sup> Remember that the verb of Trial (460, I, b) is usually omitted. <sup>8</sup> 417, I. <sup>9</sup> 465 and 467. <sup>10</sup> 258. <sup>11</sup> 667. <sup>12</sup> Use *facere* and see 470. <sup>13</sup> = 'what fortune they had had' (349). <sup>14</sup> 369. <sup>15</sup> = 'which hope to follow.'



## C.

3. 1. Are not my witnesses ignorant of many things that you know? 2. Did he not in the hearing<sup>1</sup> of the noble<sup>2</sup> Sulpicius confess that he had been corrupted by you and led into<sup>3</sup> dishonesty by your promises? 3. He could not any longer be unlike himself,<sup>4</sup> could he? 4. Does the senate think it a crime to give an invitation<sup>5</sup> to luncheon? 5. Are you still hesitating? or do you not know the law of Solon, who laid the death penalty<sup>6</sup> on any one who<sup>6</sup> in time of civil faction did not belong to one party or the other?<sup>7</sup> 6. Are you ignorant of the enemy or of yourselves or of the fortune of either people? 7. He asked the boy whether he wanted to go back to his father. 8. Let me know<sup>8</sup> whether you will be long at your country seat or not. 9. There was no reason why you should undergo<sup>9</sup> so great labor. 10. An effort<sup>10</sup> was made in the hope that<sup>11</sup> the brother of the accused might be permitted to console him as<sup>12</sup> he was dying.<sup>12</sup> 11. I am half-inclined to think it better to travel abroad than to sit still at home. 12. I doubt but he will turn his wife out of doors. 13. At first it was doubtful to us what we should<sup>13</sup> do. 14. Whither am<sup>13</sup> I to betake myself? 15. Somehow or other the remedy is worse than the disease. 16. Whither was he going that<sup>14</sup> you asked him so angrily whether his mother knew he was out? 17. Do not<sup>15</sup> keep back what you have come to ask.<sup>12</sup> 18. You will recognize at once what sort<sup>16</sup> of a man he is.

<sup>1</sup> Abl. Abs. <sup>2</sup> 302. <sup>3</sup> *inducere*. <sup>4</sup> 359, R. 1. <sup>5</sup> Use verb. <sup>6</sup> *capite sancire si quis*. <sup>7</sup> 'one or the other' is a single word. <sup>8</sup> *fac sciam*. <sup>9</sup> *capere*. <sup>10</sup> = 'the thing was tried.' <sup>11</sup> Remember that the verb of Trial (here Hope) is usually omitted; 460, I, b. <sup>12</sup> Participle. <sup>13</sup> 257. <sup>14</sup> 469. <sup>15</sup> 271, 2. <sup>16</sup> 468.

## D.

4. 1. Do you not seem to be able to see with your very<sup>1</sup> eyes those things which you have heard? 2. Did he really<sup>2</sup> seem to suspect his friend? 3. You are not waiting until Metellus gives<sup>3</sup> his testimony? 4. I am eager to hear what you think; or have you forgotten what I said at the beginning? 5. Does wisdom alone make us happy or not? 6. You will know when it will be, if you will instruct<sup>4</sup> your servant to inquire. 7. I wonder what was the reason why you changed your plan. 8. You will perceive whether they really<sup>2</sup> think so<sup>5</sup> or only make believe.<sup>6</sup> 9. Will you never understand that you must decide whether they are murderers or the champions of our liberty? 10. I opened the package to see<sup>7</sup> whether there was a letter to me in it. 11. I have sent you a copy of my letter to Gaius, because I am half-inclined-to-think it would have been<sup>8</sup> better not to have written it. 12. Is not the man who is without fear, suffering, and<sup>9</sup> passion happy? 13. Was<sup>10</sup> I to kill the impudent varlet? 14. It was a matter of doubt whether Mamilius or the consuls should save the citadel. 15. Archimedes was killed by some soldier or other who did not know<sup>11</sup> who he was. 16. What madness has seized him that<sup>12</sup> he comes to my house daily? 17. I crossed the ocean. To see what?<sup>13</sup> 18. Which party<sup>14</sup> seems to have made the attack?<sup>15</sup> those who had no reason for making it, or those who confess that they did make it?

<sup>1</sup> Omit. <sup>2</sup> The improbability of the fact is not emphasized in Latin. <sup>3</sup> 572, R. 2; be careful of the tense. <sup>4</sup> *negotium dare*, which is equal to a verb of ordering; for the tense, see 244, R. 2, <sup>5</sup> *id.* <sup>6</sup> *simulo*. <sup>7</sup> Observe that the verb of Trial (here Seeing) is usually omitted; 460, I, b. <sup>8</sup> 597, R. 5 (a); but see R. 3 (a). <sup>9</sup> 481, 2. <sup>10</sup> 258. <sup>11</sup> *ignarus*. <sup>12</sup> 469; use *capere*. <sup>13</sup> See 470. <sup>14</sup> Express by the pronoun. <sup>15</sup> Use verb.

## 2. OBJECT AND CAUSAL SENTENCES.

G. 523-542; A. & G. 333, 321, 272, 288 (572, 540, 459, 462, 579, 455 (1 and 2), 497 (*d*)); B. 299, 329-334, 270, 285, 286; H. 611, 613-620, 588; H. & B. 551-555, 586-590, 593-597, 605 (1 and 4), 535 (2, *a* and *b*); L. 1838-1858, 2172-2236; W. 544-549, 622-636.

In Object Clauses notice the difference between *quod*, *ut*, and the Acc. with the Infinitive, and the verbs which may take more than one of these constructions (525, 1, N. 5; 532 and N. 1). Especially important is the variation in verbs of Will (532 and NN.).

In Causal Sentences notice the usage of the various particles, *quod*, *quia*, etc., with their moods, and be careful with regard to the Rejected Reason (541, N. 2). Distinguish also between *quod* Causal and the Inf. after verbs of Emotion (542, R. ; 533).



## A.

5. 1. Are you sorry or glad that your mother-in-law has hanged herself? 2. The legions thanked<sup>1</sup> the general for having expressed so good an opinion<sup>2</sup> of them. 3. Xerxes thanked Damaratus for having been the only one<sup>3</sup> to tell him<sup>4</sup> the truth. 4. Africanus used to praise Xenophon for saying that the same labors were not equally hard on commander and private soldier. 5. That he, who though victorious<sup>5</sup> at Cannae had not dared<sup>6</sup> to go toward Rome, should after having been repulsed from Capua have conceived the hope of possessing<sup>7</sup> himself of the city! 6. The greatest advantage<sup>8</sup> of old age is that it does not long greatly for pleasure. 7. As for your exhorting me to be hopeful,<sup>9</sup> I would have you know<sup>10</sup> that the condition of the state is now such that we must fear that it will soon succumb to the machinations of the revolutionists. 8. Laelius was called the wise, not because he did not<sup>11</sup> understand what was the most pleasant thing in the world but because he considered it of slight value. 9. We read that Mithridates hated the Romans because by their arrival his power had<sup>12</sup> been shattered. 10. Will you complain that the defendant is being beset,<sup>13</sup> because the accuser is unwilling to speak as long as he is allowed? 11. We will ask Fabius to mollify the feelings of the Allobroges, since the Fabian<sup>14</sup> name is very influential with<sup>15</sup> them. 12. Suetonius tells us that Caesar pulled down a country house which had been built at great expense because it did not wholly suit<sup>16</sup> him. 13. The king would<sup>17</sup> not make peace because he thought that the Aetolians would never keep quiet.

<sup>1</sup> Observe the difference between *gratiam habere*, 'to feel grateful,' and *gratias agere*, 'to express gratitude, to thank.' <sup>2</sup> 'express an opinion,' *iudicium facere*; 'so good,' Superlative (302). <sup>3</sup> 325, R. 6. <sup>4</sup> 521; could the demonstrative also be used? <sup>5</sup> *victor*; 609. <sup>6</sup> 631, I. <sup>7</sup> 427, N. 5. <sup>8</sup> *laus*. <sup>9</sup> *spem habere*. <sup>10</sup> *scito*. <sup>11</sup> 541, N. 2. Laelius *did* understand. <sup>12</sup> 518. <sup>13</sup> *circumvenire*. <sup>14</sup> = 'of the Fabii.' <sup>15</sup> 416, 4. <sup>16</sup> Use *ex sententia esse* and modify the sentence accordingly. <sup>17</sup> When is 'would' *nolle* and when the Impf. Indicative?

## B.

6. 1. I am glad that you have got well. 2. I thank<sup>1</sup> you for having come to my assistance. 3. We grieve that we do not know when we shall see you. 4. The generals of the king of Persia<sup>2</sup> sent ambassadors to Athens to complain that Chabrias was waging war on the king in concert with the Egyptians. 5. To think that he should have entertained such cruel projects!<sup>3</sup> 6. The fact that the Carthaginians then for the first time<sup>4</sup> transported an army to Sicily seemed in no way to concern<sup>5</sup> the Roman state.<sup>6</sup> 7. Did anyone ever thank the gods because he was a good man? 8. The circumstance that Isocrates was hindered from<sup>7</sup> speaking in public by the weakness of his voice did not prevent him from<sup>7</sup> being considered a distinguished orator. 9. Inasmuch as his youth and his modesty hinder<sup>8</sup> his speaking he has handed his case over to me. 10. You have done me a great favor in writing me what<sup>9</sup> has happened in the city. 11. I pray the gods that the baby may live long, since the father has a kindly heart. 12. Prepare for war since ye have been unable to endure peace. 13. Admirably does Plato call pleasure a bait for<sup>10</sup> the bad, for by it men are caught as fish by a hook. 14. We have been warned to be on our guard against<sup>11</sup> being picked up by highwaymen, because they will get to the regions which we are making for sooner than we can. 15. I have decided to<sup>12</sup> write you these things, not because I think that they escape your notice, but because under your load<sup>13</sup> of grief you see them less clearly.

<sup>1</sup> See above, Ex. 5, Note 1. <sup>2</sup> The 'king of the Persians' or 'the Persian king.' <sup>3</sup> The neut. adj. or *res* is often represented by a more special word in English; to 'entertain' is to 'think.' <sup>4</sup> 325, R. 7. <sup>5</sup> *pertinere*. <sup>6</sup> *res Romana*. <sup>7</sup> 548, 549; notice the effect of the negative. <sup>8</sup> *impedimento esse*. <sup>9</sup> Whether *quid* or *quod*? 467, R. 2. <sup>10</sup> 'For' is also a translation for the Gen. (363, R. 1.) <sup>11</sup> 548, N. 3. <sup>12</sup> 546; but observe that a verb of Will is usually not followed by a Subjv. when the two verbs *have the same subject*. <sup>13</sup> Added for effect; the Roman would omit 'load' and use a Participle like *impeditus*.

## C.

7. 1. I am astonished at your not having been beaten<sup>1</sup> by your own servants. 2. Valerius used to praise the good fortune<sup>2</sup> of Brutus in having found his death<sup>3</sup> while fighting for<sup>4</sup> his country. 3. A certain merchant boasted that he had despatched many ships to every seacoast. 4. I, whom some consider the father of my country, I bring hordes of outlandish-foreigners<sup>5</sup> to devastate Italy! 5. The greatest argument is that nature herself though<sup>6</sup> silent gives judgment about the immortality of the soul, in that it is a matter of the greatest concern<sup>7</sup> to all what is going to happen after death. 6. I thank<sup>8</sup> thee, great Sun, that before I depart<sup>9</sup> this life I see Africanus in my kingdom. 7. It<sup>10</sup> was a gift of fortune that Atticus was born in a city in which was the seat of empire of the world; it<sup>10</sup> was a proof of his good sense that he was dear to the Athenians above<sup>11</sup> all others. 8. Most seafarers of antiquity<sup>12</sup> were at first pirates because piracy was not regarded as<sup>13</sup> a crime. 9. Damaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii because he could not endure the tyrant Cypselus. 10. I wish you would write me what answer he has given in my case,<sup>14</sup> not that the promise will do me any good<sup>15</sup> but because I shall be able to say that there is nothing that I have<sup>16</sup> not tried. 11. The decision of the struggle<sup>17</sup> was doubtful, rather because the enemy had made a sudden charge than because he was a match in strength. 12. I am entering upon the remainder of the speech with great hope, since I have now passed over the most dangerous place.

<sup>1</sup> 214, R. I. <sup>2</sup> 'Fortune' is *good* or *bad* according to the context. <sup>3</sup> *mortem occumbere*. <sup>4</sup> 345, R. 2. <sup>5</sup> *barbarus*; a 'foreigner' is usually *peregrinus* when no contempt is felt. <sup>6</sup> 667. <sup>7</sup> *curae esse*. <sup>8</sup> See above, Ex. 5, Note 1. <sup>9</sup> *migrare*. <sup>10</sup> 307, R. 1. <sup>11</sup> 303. <sup>12</sup> *antiquus*. <sup>13</sup> *habere*; is the Dative (356, R. 2) or the Ablative with *pro* to be used? <sup>14</sup> That is, 'concerning me.' <sup>15</sup> *prodesse*. <sup>16</sup> 631, 2. <sup>17</sup> The 'struggle' and the 'decision' were not divided in the Roman's mind.



## D.

8. 1. He was indignant at being envied<sup>1</sup> by his own brothers. 2. Alcibiades is praised for his justice and integrity, but blamed for having, from lust of vengeance, betrayed his country to the Lacedaemonians. 3. You are not sorry that<sup>2</sup> I have brought the enemy across? 4. The idea of your having done anything that would<sup>3</sup> benefit the human race! 5. That there is a god we conclude<sup>4</sup> from the fact that the belief in<sup>5</sup> god is innate in all. 6. Children do well to keep nothing from their parents. 7. Nothing did more<sup>6</sup> to destroy the maritime cities of Carthage and Corinth than that in their desire<sup>7</sup> for trade and navigation they had given up agriculture and arms. 8. The consuls were given up to the Samnites because they had<sup>8</sup> made peace with the Samnites and allowed<sup>9</sup> the legions to pass under the yoke. 9. Seeing that the life which we enjoy is short we ought to make our<sup>10</sup> memory as long as possible.<sup>11</sup> 10. The Stoics think that an honorable life is to be preferred, not that that life is more blessed but because it is more in accord<sup>12</sup> with nature. 11. Fabius did not wish his son to be made consul, not that he lacked confidence<sup>13</sup> in his distinguished virtues, for he was an excellent man, but in order that this high office<sup>14</sup> should not be kept<sup>15</sup> in one family. 12. A captive, having gone from the camp by permission of Hannibal, returned soon afterwards because as he said<sup>16</sup> he had forgotten something. 13. Is it because maladies of the mind are less harmful than those of the body, or because while<sup>17</sup> bodies can be cared for<sup>18</sup> there is no medicine for minds, that no attention<sup>19</sup> must be paid to them?

<sup>1</sup> 217. <sup>2</sup> The negative indicates that the suggestion is a false one; see 541, N. 2. <sup>3</sup> 631. <sup>4</sup> *efficere*, which in this sense is a verb of Saying. <sup>5</sup> A substantive in model Latin has, as a rule, but one case construction; 360. <sup>6</sup> *magis*. <sup>7</sup> *cupidus*. <sup>8</sup> The fact or the reason assigned by the senate? on this depends the mood. <sup>9</sup> Use *mittere* and see 664, R. 1. <sup>10</sup> 304, 2. <sup>11</sup> 303. <sup>12</sup> *accommodatus*. <sup>13</sup> *diffidere*. <sup>14</sup> *magistratus*. <sup>15</sup> *continuaré*. <sup>16</sup> Express by the mood. <sup>17</sup> Concession and opposition are often expressed by simple coördination, without conjunction. <sup>18</sup> *curare*. <sup>19</sup> *curatio*.

### 3. FINAL SENTENCES.

G. 543-550; A. & G. 317, 318, 331 (529-532, 533, 558 (*b*), 563-566); B. 282, 295, 296 (2); H. 564-568; II. & B. 502 (2, 3, 4), 511 (2); L. 1947-1964, 1974-1979; W. 506-518.

In Final Sentences pay attention to the particles employed, and especially the combination of the Negative (543, 4). Observe the different constructions when the verb of Will is a verb of Saying (546, R. 1), and notice 546, N. 3. Study the influence of the Negative on the construction after verbs of Hindering. Notice the tenses used in 546-9, and contrast with those in 550.

## A.

9. 1. I have toiled to get <sup>1</sup> the prisoners spared. 2. There are letters extant from <sup>2</sup> Philip to <sup>3</sup> Alexander in which he advises that he win the hearts of the masses to love him <sup>4</sup> by kind language. 3. Metellus persuaded the envoys of Jugurtha to deliver to him the king alive or <sup>5</sup> dead. 4. I readily convinced him that I was not free <sup>6</sup> to do what <sup>7</sup> he asked. 5. A great mind is convinced that a man ought neither to admire nor desire nor seek after anything but <sup>8</sup> what is honorable and becoming. 6. Caesar gave orders before the engagement for the horses to be removed in order that <sup>9</sup> the hope of flight might be taken away thereby. <sup>9</sup> 7. I omit to name many who are worthy of praise in order that no one <sup>10</sup> may complain that he is passed by. 8. Herod gave orders for the children to be <sup>11</sup> slain. 9. I am prevented by grief from writing more to you. 10. The humble origin of Marius and Cicero did not stand in the way of their working up to the consulship. 11. He said that while <sup>12</sup> quaestor at Ephesus he had been forcibly <sup>13</sup> prevented from taking his slave out of the temple of Diana. 12. Those fortifications did not deter the Roman leader from ordering the infantry to break through. 13. I was worried for fear <sup>14</sup> that I had let <sup>15</sup> something disgraceful come to my charge. <sup>15</sup> 14. I fear that he has not received the letter. 15. In view of his having made friends <sup>16</sup> with the masses by his liberality, <sup>17</sup> he is not afraid that he has not won the Senate by his exceptional services to <sup>18</sup> the state.

<sup>1</sup> This word merely emphasizes the Design in English; be careful of the Sequence. <sup>2</sup> 'Philip' is to be construed with 'letters'; what case? 360, R. 1. <sup>3</sup> *ad*; 345, R. 2. <sup>4</sup> That is, 'to good will.' <sup>5</sup> 493, 3. <sup>6</sup> Use *licere* and remember 546, R. 1. <sup>7</sup> 467, R. 2. <sup>8</sup> 591, *b*, 2. <sup>9</sup> 610 and 545, 2. <sup>10</sup> Be careful of the Negative. <sup>11</sup> 532, N. 1. <sup>12</sup> A substantive or adjective has the same function as a participle (664) in expressing subordinate relations. <sup>13</sup> 399, N. 1. <sup>14</sup> Involved in the conjunction. <sup>15</sup> Use the passive of *admittere*. <sup>16</sup> Use *placare*. <sup>17</sup> *munera*. <sup>18</sup> 418, I.



## B.

10. 1. Before old age let us see to it<sup>1</sup> that we live well, in old age that we die well. 2. The general ordered his men to march as far as possible<sup>2</sup> to the left that they might not be seen from any quarter.<sup>3</sup> 3. No one can afford in any case to be indifferent<sup>4</sup> to what he has made up his mind is an evil. 4. I am persuaded that against Sulla's preferment I owed you as much as you ventured to demand of me, but that against his safety I owe you nothing. 5. Birds of prey<sup>5</sup> are endowed with a very keen vision in order that they may be able to see their prey from a great distance.<sup>6</sup> 6. Tarquinius Superbus determined to choose no one senator that the estate might be the more<sup>7</sup> despised by reason of its meagre numbers. 7. The conspirators bound themselves by a solemn<sup>8</sup> oath that no<sup>9</sup> one should divulge the thing. 8. I will not hinder that being done. 9. The night and the booty delayed the enemy from making full<sup>10</sup> use of their victory. 10. Much may stand in the way of the accomplishment<sup>11</sup> of your endeavors. 11. No one's unfriendly edict shall prevent me from defending your rights. 12. They were prevented by the bravery of the Italian legion from being pushed into the intrenchment by the Othonians, though<sup>12</sup> these were fewer in numbers. 13. I fear that I am troublesome. 14. Are you afraid that you will<sup>13</sup> not be able to contend against Hortensius? 15. I fear that I have preached my sermons<sup>14</sup> to deaf ears. 16. I fear that Zeno, who thinks that a life of blessedness<sup>15</sup> depends<sup>16</sup> on virtue alone, attributes more to virtue than nature allows.

<sup>1</sup> *curare*. <sup>2</sup> 303. <sup>3</sup> Use *necunde*. <sup>4</sup> 'afford to neglect,' *non curare*. <sup>5</sup> *rapax*. <sup>6</sup> Express by *longinquus* in a phrase. <sup>7</sup> 545, 2. <sup>8</sup> Included in the substantive. <sup>9</sup> Be careful of the Negative. <sup>10</sup> Unnecessary in Latin. <sup>11</sup> Express by a verb. <sup>12</sup> See above, Ex. 9, Note 12. <sup>13</sup> As an expression of Fear involves Futurity, there is no occasion to express 'will' in Latin. <sup>14</sup> *praecepta canere*. <sup>15</sup> Use *beatus*. <sup>16</sup> *poni in*.

## C.

11. 1. The father begged each individual<sup>1</sup> senator with tears<sup>2</sup> to spare his son ; afterwards he begged and besought the opposite party not to attack his son. 2. Alexander made an edict that no one should paint him<sup>3</sup> except Apelles. 3. Pompey reminded me that<sup>4</sup> I had promised him not to go into the senate until I had finished the business. 4. You can persuade no one that you were so foolish as to desire the slaves of Ausonius and Ballio to enrich themselves at your risk<sup>5</sup> and your children's. 5. Isocrates used to write speeches for others to use in court. 6. No sensible man punishes because a sin has been committed but to prevent<sup>6</sup> its commission.<sup>7</sup> 7. We demand that you determine nothing about the accused in his absence<sup>8</sup> without investigation of the case.<sup>9</sup> 8. The army begged Alexander with tears to put an end to the war. 9. That matter did not deter me from sending a letter to you. 10. It was the fault of<sup>10</sup> the general that the blow received at<sup>11</sup> Cannae was not repaid to the enemy. 11. They are hindered by no fault of their own from setting forth the faults of a neighbor.<sup>12</sup> 12. I do not think you ought to be deterred from changing your opinion if you deem it right to-do-so.<sup>13</sup> 13. I do not fear that the enemy will not be conquered. 14. I was not afraid that I should be unable to sustain the weight<sup>14</sup> of your innumerable favors to<sup>15</sup> me. 15. What? was it this that I was afraid of, that if I were dealt<sup>16</sup> with according to the customs<sup>17</sup> and institutions of our forefathers I should not be able to face it?<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *unusquisque* with Genitive. <sup>2</sup> Participle. <sup>3</sup> 521. <sup>4</sup> Be careful of 546, R. 1. <sup>5</sup> *periculo*. <sup>6</sup> This is involved in the conjunction. <sup>7</sup> Employ a verb. <sup>8</sup> Participle. <sup>9</sup> 'Without' is frequently to be translated by the Abl. Abs. as here. <sup>10</sup> *per aliquem stare*; 548, N. 1. <sup>11</sup> Distinguish between 'at' meaning 'at' and 'at' meaning 'in the neighborhood of' <sup>12</sup> *alienus*. <sup>13</sup> Omit. <sup>14</sup> Involved in the verb *sustinere*, and hence to be left untranslated. <sup>15</sup> 'To,' meaning 'towards,' is *ad*, *adversus*, *erga*, *in* according to the connection. <sup>16</sup> *agere cum*. <sup>17</sup> Singular <sup>18</sup> *praesentem sustinere*; 667. <sup>18</sup> Omit.

## D.

12. 1. Beware of considering the well known as unknown. 2. Lucullus says with regard to his history<sup>1</sup> which he had written in Greek,<sup>2</sup> that in order to prove more readily that it was the work<sup>3</sup> of a Roman he had inserted certain solecisms. 3. I am convinced that this thing will be rather to<sup>4</sup> your credit than to your discredit. 4. I have always been convinced that a man's fortune was to be estimated in the light<sup>5</sup> of his acts, not of their results. 5. The men-of-Clusium<sup>6</sup> sent ambassadors to Rome to beg the senate for help. 6. The thirty tyrants sent emissaries to kill Alcibiades. 7. The proconsul Metellus avoided the sight of Marius, who was his successor<sup>7</sup> in order not to see a low-born fellow with the consular power and the fasces. 8. A law was passed that no one should be accused of past offences nor fined therefor.<sup>8</sup> 9. Let me perish rather than be a burden<sup>4</sup> to you. 10. No citizen<sup>9</sup> seemed to have any just excuse for not being present. 11. I do not deter you from changing your opinion. 12. I think that up to this time the winter has kept us from getting certain news<sup>10</sup> of how you were faring.<sup>11</sup> 13. He was deterred by the advice of his friends from entering the city as conqueror.<sup>12</sup> 14. I fear that if I give this letter to him he will<sup>13</sup> open it. 15. He was afraid that he would not be able to support that storm<sup>14</sup> with his own resources. 16. We are afraid that we may seem to have served not the interest of the others but our own. 17. Those who envy Caesar pretend to be afraid that he may not be able to restrain himself.

<sup>1</sup> Plural. <sup>2</sup> *Græce*. <sup>3</sup> 366 and R. 1. <sup>4</sup> 356. <sup>5</sup> 402. <sup>6</sup> *Clusini*. <sup>7</sup> *alicui in locum* or *in locum alicuius succedere*. <sup>8</sup> Omit. <sup>9</sup> Dative. <sup>10</sup> *certum habere*. <sup>11</sup> *agere*. <sup>12</sup> Apply to 'city'; = 'conquered (territory).' <sup>13</sup> Futurity is involved in the conception of Fear; hence 'will' need not be expressed in the Latin. <sup>14</sup> *tempestas*.



#### 4. CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

G. 551-558; A. & G. 319, 332 (536-538, 558, 559, 568-571, 580 (*d*), 462 (*a*));  
B. 284, 297, 298, 268 (6); II. 570, 571, 595, 596; H. & B. 519 (3 and 4),  
521 (2 and 3), 503 (*b*); L. 1965-1970, 1980-1990; W. 519-528.

Attention should be paid to the Negatives (543, 4), and to the tenses that can be used, as compared with the tenses of the Final Sentences. Of particular importance is 513. Compare the constructions with *quīn* and those with *quominus* in the previous group, and study the effect of the Interrogative Sequence (555, 2, and R. 1). Important also is the parallel use of the Infinitive in this class of sentences (553, 2, N.; 553, 4, R. 2; 557 and 422).

## A.

13. 1. The severity of the sickness makes us need medicine. 2. He ought to be a greater<sup>1</sup> friend to me than to those men who have always been bitter<sup>2</sup> enemies to us, and<sup>3</sup> by whose artifices it has been brought about that the state is<sup>4</sup> in its present<sup>5</sup> condition. 3. Some animals, as for instance<sup>6</sup> the tiger and the hyena, are so savage that they cannot be tamed in any way. 4. It is not right that envy should be an attendant of worth. 5. I do not doubt that Caesar has arrived at Brundisium. 6. No one doubted that he was<sup>7</sup> to be restored to his kingdom by the senate and the Roman people. 7. There is no one of you but perceives that the Roman people is at this time suffering from<sup>8</sup> the cruelty bred-by-the-civil-war.<sup>9</sup> 8. He thought that he ought not to hesitate to enter a decisive<sup>10</sup> engagement. 9. I do not think that you fail to observe<sup>11</sup> that in times of civil strife men ought to follow the more honorable side.<sup>12</sup> 10. So far were our soldiers from being disturbed by the reverse that they made sallies in force whenever fortune gave them the opportunity. 11. The desire of driving the Romans from Sicily went so far<sup>13</sup> that even the besieged<sup>14</sup> at Syracuse plucked up courage. 12. It happened that both consuls came to Praeneste on the same day. 13. Our men overhauled them and defeated them so completely that of the whole number of ships very few succeeded-in-getting-to<sup>15</sup> land under cover of<sup>16</sup> the darkness. 14. Dolabella was so forgetful of the claims<sup>17</sup> of humanity that he exercised his cruelty not only on the living but on the dead.

<sup>1</sup> That is, 'more friendly.' <sup>2</sup> Superlative. <sup>3</sup> The conjunction is usually omitted between two relatives referring to the same antecedent. <sup>4</sup> Watch the Sequence; 511, R. 3. <sup>5</sup> 305. <sup>6</sup> *ut*. <sup>7</sup> The Subjunctive after *quin* may be an original one; that is, may be the answer to an implied Deliberative Question and hence be translated 'is to be,' by itself. <sup>8</sup> Use *laborare*. <sup>9</sup> *domesticus*. <sup>10</sup> *pugna decertare*. <sup>11</sup> *aliquem fugere*, 'to escape a man's notice.' <sup>12</sup> *pars*. <sup>13</sup> *adeo procedere*. <sup>14</sup> 624, R. <sup>15</sup> = 'reached'; success is involved in the tense. <sup>16</sup> = 'by the intervention of night.' <sup>17</sup> Humanity involves 'the claims of humanity.'

## B.

14. 1. It is by loyal service that<sup>1</sup> you have brought it about that no one is<sup>2</sup> dearer to the prince than you. 2. It happened accidentally that we met the line of march. 3. The enemy rushed up so quickly that the people<sup>3</sup> in the fields were surprised. 4. There arose a violent storm so that we could not leave the harbor. 5. It is true that Scipio surpassed all<sup>4</sup> other generals in good luck; it is not to be denied that Hannibal excelled Scipio in skill. 6. I do not doubt that a ruinous war is impending. 7. I see that no one doubts that in Sicily Verres made spoil of everything sacred and profane. 8. Was there any one who did not weep? any one who did not take such a view of their calamity as to judge their danger to be common to all? 9. He heard the voices of all saying<sup>5</sup> that they ought<sup>6</sup> not to wait any longer before going into camp. 10. In<sup>7</sup> the strife that arose he barely escaped<sup>8</sup> being killed by the exiles. 11. So far from his changing my plan, I think he himself ought<sup>6</sup> to be heartily sorry for having given up<sup>9</sup> his own. 12. Twenty-five jurymen were so brave as to have preferred to perish themselves rather<sup>10</sup> than ruin the state. 13. Their resources increased to such a degree that none<sup>11</sup> of their neighbors dared to take up arms. 14. The disagreement became so great that finally Trebellius fled to Vitellius after<sup>12</sup> being deserted by all the cavalry. 15. Her face was immediately bathed<sup>13</sup> in tears, so that you might<sup>14</sup> readily have known that it was due<sup>15</sup> to longing for you.

<sup>1</sup> The use of 'that' is peculiar to English. <sup>2</sup> 511, R. 3. <sup>3</sup> 624, R. <sup>4</sup> *ceteri*. <sup>5</sup> This is involved in the word 'voice.' <sup>6</sup> Study the difference between *oportere*, *debere*, and the Gerundive. <sup>7</sup> = 'a struggle having arisen.' <sup>8</sup> *haud multum abesse*. <sup>9</sup> *decedere de*. <sup>10</sup> This is involved in the verb. <sup>11</sup> 'None' exhausts the list. <sup>12</sup> 665. <sup>13</sup> *suffundere*. <sup>14</sup> The Subjv. after *ut* may be original; 258. <sup>15</sup> *fieri*.



## C.

15. 1. It often happens that the most perspicacious man fails<sup>1</sup> to notice what lies before his eyes. 2. It is owing<sup>2</sup> to your dilatoriness that Hannibal has had Italy as a province for more than<sup>3</sup> nine years and has lived there longer than in Carthage. 3. Manners<sup>4</sup> and customs are so different that the Cretans deem it honorable to practise highway robbery. 4. It is rare for a man to respect his own judgment sufficiently. 5. I did not doubt that we could accomplish the journey. 6. I did not doubt that my brother and myself ought<sup>5</sup> to make our way to Brundisium. 7. No one catches sight of him without<sup>6</sup> uttering a groan, no one makes mention of him without cursing him. 8. He thought the barbarians would not refrain from pressing forward into Italy. 9. There is not lacking the suspicion<sup>7</sup> that he committed suicide. 10. So far were the ancient Romans from luxury that they used to swear at the Megalensian games not to take<sup>8</sup> any wine except that<sup>9</sup> of their country. 11. The army was so cut to pieces that out of eighteen thousand men not more than<sup>10</sup> two thousand escaped. 12. The effect<sup>11</sup> of the omen was such that Dionysius began to reign a few days later. 13. The city was in such a desperate state<sup>12</sup> that not more than ten days' provisions remained in the granaries. 14. Such a mixed multitude of people had filled all the roads that you would have said<sup>13</sup> that all Africa was<sup>14</sup> suddenly forsaken. 15. All singers have this weakness, that when asked they can never bring themselves<sup>15</sup> to sing, but when not asked<sup>16</sup> never leave off.

<sup>1</sup> *fallere aliquem*. <sup>2</sup> *feri*. <sup>3</sup> 294. <sup>4</sup> *instituta vitae*. <sup>5</sup> The Subjv. after *quin* may be original; thus, 'ought we to make our way?' would be *nos conferamus?* <sup>6</sup> 556. <sup>7</sup> As *suspicio* is a word of Thinking, we may have two constructions here, according as you regard *abest* or *suspicio*. <sup>8</sup> *uti*. <sup>9</sup> 308, 3. <sup>10</sup> 296, R. 4. <sup>11</sup> *vim habere*, 'to have value, effect.' <sup>12</sup> *discrimine nutare*, 'to be at a critical state.' <sup>13</sup> 258. <sup>14</sup> Be careful of the English tense. <sup>15</sup> *animum inducere*. <sup>16</sup> = 'unbidden.'

## D.

16. 1. The proconsul took many cities and plundered the temples of the gods ; and <sup>1</sup> hence it came about that he had a superabundance of gold and silver. 2. If this statement is not true, it follows that it is false. 3. Only <sup>1</sup> so much meat and drink is to be taken <sup>2</sup> as to restore the strength, <sup>3</sup> not overpower it. 4. If divine providence contemns tribes and nations, what wonder is it that the whole human race is despised by it ? 5. We did not doubt that the house had been adjudged to us. 6. There is no doubt that they will make him dictator. 7. Out of all this number I say there was no one, who was at Rome, that did not take up arms and follow the consul. 8. On the day before <sup>4</sup> the Germans could not be restrained from casting their javelins at our troops. 9. When <sup>5</sup> our ambassadors demanded satisfaction <sup>6</sup> they hardly refrained <sup>7</sup> from maltreating them. 10. So far from grieving that his mother-in-law was dead, he got up a party <sup>8</sup> three days after she was buried. 11. All the roads were blocked with cavalry so that of that great multitude scarcely a thousand got off. 12. The soldiers-of-the-first-legion <sup>9</sup> became so riotous that certain of them actually <sup>10</sup> hurled stones at Galba's effigies. 13. The storm hid the king in so dense a cloud that it completely <sup>10</sup> cut off the view of him from the assembly. 14. So many ships were collected that you would have <sup>11</sup> thought that all the forests of Italy had not been sufficient for building so great a fleet. 15. The former kings ruled in such a way that all in succession <sup>12</sup> are counted as founders of parts of the city.

<sup>1</sup> Unnecessary in Latin. <sup>2</sup> *adhibere*. <sup>3</sup> That is, 'powers.' <sup>4</sup> *pridie* with Genitive. <sup>5</sup> 665. <sup>6</sup> *res repetere*. <sup>7</sup> Use *haud procul abesse*. <sup>8</sup> *convivium*. <sup>9</sup> *primanus*. <sup>10</sup> Translate by the tense. <sup>11</sup> The Subjv. after *ut* may be original ; 258. <sup>12</sup> *deinceps*.

## 5. ANTECEDENT AND ITERATIVE ACTION.

G. 560-567; A. & G. 324 (543); B. 287; H. 602; H. & B. 557, 558, 484;  
L. 1923-1934, 1885-1887; W. 529-532.

In Antecedent Action the most important matter to notice is that the most common Particle is *postquam* and the most common tense the Perfect. The other tenses follow definite principles which should be carefully weighed. Consider what the reference to the *spectator* means. In Iterative Action bear the Mood well in mind and the Tense law, and be on your guard against the vagueness of the English manner of expression.



## A.

17. 1. When the war was finished the consul returned to Rome and triumphed. 2. As soon as he heard that I had reached Dyrrachium he dismissed<sup>1</sup> his lictors and came to me immediately. 3. The very Campanians, as I used to hear related, as soon as they caught sight of you, refused to have a Campanian as consul. 4. When not only the forage had been cut off, but the foliage of the trees was also found<sup>2</sup> to be failing, Pompey thought that he ought to make some effort.<sup>3</sup> 5. As soon as Appius saw that no one was coming to consult<sup>4</sup> him he hurried home and wrote to his colleagues in the camp. 6. Three days after the king came he drew up his forces in line of battle, but after the battle began his line gave way. 7. The garrison surrendered forty-seven days after we began to besiege them. 8. The Romans only got possession of the town forty days after they reached it. 9. Ambassadors came from Bocchus the fifth day after the barbarians had fought their second unsuccessful<sup>5</sup> battle. 10. When they hear you they think that you are silly. 11. Physicians employ remedies for even the smallest part of the body if it suffers.<sup>6</sup> 12. When we see swallows we think that summer is beginning. 13. As soon as he ever set foot outside of his threshold he surpassed almost every one in dignity. 14. Whenever the enemy made an attack on any<sup>7</sup> part they forced our men to give ground. 15. So much greater calamity did Verres bring upon Sicily than Hannibal that whereas<sup>8</sup> in the former<sup>9</sup> time every field was plowed as soon as the enemy was subdued, now after the departure of this plague no one was found willing<sup>10</sup> to plow.

<sup>1</sup> 664, R. 1. <sup>2</sup> Varying expressions, such as 'found, perceived, saw,' and the like, are used to indicate the Spectator (562). <sup>3</sup> Use *conari* and see 333, I. <sup>4</sup> 331, R. 3. <sup>5</sup> *male pugnare*, 'to fight an unsuccessful battle.' <sup>6</sup> Be careful of the ambiguity of the English Present. <sup>7</sup> Use *quicumque*, 'whichever.' <sup>8</sup> Use *autem* to introduce the second part of the contrasted Results. <sup>9</sup> 307. <sup>10</sup> = 'to plow of his own accord' (*sua voluntate*).

B.

18. 1. After the soldiers had gained the victory they left the vanquished nothing.<sup>1</sup> 2. As soon as they heard that Valerius was being despatched to them, although he had not yet set out from Italy they drove Cotta out of the town. 3. He left him as soon as he could and departed from the province. 4. After he saw<sup>2</sup> that the men were unwilling to renew the fight he withdrew into winter quarters. 5. As soon as they perceived that the soldiers stood in line on either side,<sup>3</sup> the leaders came forth into the space between. 6. As soon as he found that the consul was drawing nigh<sup>4</sup> with his army, he moved his camp now towards the city, now towards Gaul. 7. Gnaeus Scipio was killed eight years after he came to Spain and twenty-nine days after the death of his brother. 8. He laid<sup>5</sup> down his office on the eighteenth day after he had been created dictator. 9. In the three hundred and second<sup>6</sup> year after Rome was founded the form of the government was changed for the second time. 10. Fortune for the most part<sup>7</sup> makes those blind whom she embraces. 11. When we see the labor of animals in rearing their young we seem to hear the voice of nature herself. 12. The heart of the victim will disappear<sup>8</sup> as soon as you have<sup>9</sup> sprinkled meal and wine upon it. 13. As often as each cohort charged a great number of the enemy fell. 14. Young ducks<sup>10</sup> leave the hens by which they have been hatched as soon as they are able to see the water. 15. Epicurus teaches us that every living creature, as soon as it is born, reaches out after pleasure and rejoices in it as the greatest good.

<sup>1</sup> *nihil reliqui facere*, 'to leave nothing'; 369, R. 2. <sup>2</sup> The spectator is often indicated by employing 'saw, found,' and the like (562). <sup>3</sup> *utrimque*. <sup>4</sup> *adventare*. <sup>5</sup> *se abdicare*. <sup>6</sup> 96, 5: 'for the second time,' *iterum* is preferred to *secundum*. <sup>7</sup> *plerumque*. <sup>8</sup> *abscedere*. <sup>9</sup> Be careful of the ambiguity of the English Perfect. <sup>10</sup> *Pulli anatum*.

## C.

19. 1. As soon as our forces had taken their stand on dry ground they made an attack on the enemy. 2. As soon as he came into the city he gave orders that they should pull down the statue and carry it off to Messana. 3. When<sup>1</sup> Scipio said this he suddenly caught sight of Furius coming, and as soon as he had saluted him laid hold<sup>2</sup> of him in the most cordial<sup>3</sup> manner and seated<sup>4</sup> him on his sofa. 4. As soon as they found<sup>5</sup> that there was slight hope of defending the town they took<sup>2</sup> their goods and left it. 5. Finally when no trace of the enemy could be<sup>6</sup> perceived anywhere, they began their march, not long before sunset. 6. After I tell<sup>7</sup> you what I think you ought to believe me. 7. Conon was recalled to his country four years after he was banished. 8. Tyre was taken in the seventh month after the siege began. 9. She expired the fifth day after she had made up her mind<sup>8</sup> to die. 10. Crocodiles seek the water as soon as they are<sup>7</sup> able to move.<sup>9</sup> 11. Women in India when the husband of any one dies enter into a contest which<sup>10</sup> one he loved most. 12. As soon as he entered any town he immediately sent out these hounds to track out everything. 13. The general did not leave the standing camp except when want of forage forced him to change his position. 14. Whenever<sup>11</sup> you come to my house you will find a bed ready. 15. I bear in mind<sup>12</sup> that Scaevola used daily as soon as it was light to give<sup>13</sup> every one an opportunity of meeting him.

<sup>1</sup> *cum*; 585. <sup>2</sup> 664, R. 1. <sup>3</sup> That is, 'friendly.' <sup>4</sup> *ponere*; 385, R. 1.  
<sup>5</sup> See Note 2 of the previous exercise. <sup>6</sup> 'Could' with the Negative shows the effort (233, especially N. 1). <sup>7</sup> Be careful of the ambiguity of the English Present. <sup>8</sup> *statuere*. <sup>9</sup> *se movere*. <sup>10</sup> An interrogative clause is not necessarily preceded by a verb of Asking. <sup>11</sup> *si quando*. <sup>12</sup> *memoria teneo*; 281, 2, N. <sup>13</sup> *facere potestatem*.



D.

20. 1. As soon as I got to Rome I thought there was nothing I had to do sooner<sup>1</sup> than to congratulate you. 2. As soon as he caught sight of the consul Lentulus he fainted almost on the threshold of the senate-house. 3. From the time<sup>2</sup> that I set out with the army I have never set foot in the house. 4. After I have thought out a plan you ought to try<sup>3</sup> it. 5. As soon as Labienus found<sup>4</sup> that neither the ramparts nor the ditches could withstand the attack of the enemy he informed Caesar. 6. As soon as it was learned<sup>4</sup> that the envoys were nearing Rome the senate was consulted by Bestia. 7. About fifty years after Themistocles left Athens because<sup>5</sup> he could not defend it Pericles refused to do the same thing although he held nothing but the walls. 8. Aristides was restored to his country about<sup>6</sup> six years after he had been expelled. 9. Petelia was taken by storm<sup>7</sup> by Himilco several months after the siege began. 10. These birds ward off the plague from Egypt by killing<sup>8</sup> the winged snakes which are blown in from the Libyan Desert by the African wind. 11. The whole theatre<sup>9</sup> cries out if a verse is<sup>10</sup> one syllable too short or too long. 12. As often as a man killed<sup>10</sup> an enemy he wasted time in cutting off his head. 13. These pursuits used to rouse the young men to crime when their private resources failed. 14. The further they advanced their camp the further they were from water. 15. It often happens in battle that the cowardly soldier throws<sup>11</sup> away his shield and runs as soon as he sees the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> *prius*; 644, R. 3. <sup>2</sup> Use *ut*, 'after.' <sup>3</sup> *uti*. <sup>4</sup> See Note 2 in Exercise 17. <sup>5</sup> Use simple Relative. The fact is the cause; 626. <sup>6</sup> 677, R. 1. <sup>7</sup> Distinguish between *oppugnare* and *expugnare*. <sup>8</sup> See 582. <sup>9</sup> Use Plural to increase the effect of the generalization. <sup>10</sup> Be careful of the ambiguity of the English Present and Past. <sup>11</sup> 664, R. 1.

## 6. CONTEMPORANEOUS AND SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

G. 568-577; A. & G. 327, 328, 314 (550-556, 528); B. 291-293, 310; II. 587, 603-605; H. & B. 559, 560, 507 (4 and 5), 571, 529, 550 (*b*); L. 1991-2009, 1911-1922; W. 533, 534, 563-565.

In Contemporaneous Action the most difficult conception is that of the Ideal Limit (572). This depends wholly upon whether the reaching of the Limit is not considered, in which case the Subjunctive is used, or is assumed as inevitable, in which case the Indicative is used (571). Note also the use of Present as a short-hand for the Future Perfect (228). Study the other constructions of *verba expectandi* (572, R. 2), and the Conditional Proviso.

In Subsequent Action we have the same difficulty with the Ideal Limit (577), and with the short-hand Present. Observe that *non priusquam* is the same as *dum*. In both of these kinds of Action look well to your tenses.

A.

21. 1. She says that she pulled off his<sup>1</sup> ring in the struggle.<sup>2</sup> 2. There are no other mountains during the crossing of which by our enemies new means of defence may<sup>3</sup> be provided. 3. While my wife is getting ready<sup>4</sup> a whole hour passes. 4. We favored you so long as we saw that you were a friend of virtue and an enemy of vice. 5. I beg you to defend them from violence until I bring up my master. 6. They will not make an end of following until they drive the enemy headlong. 7. He delayed a few days for the forces from Corcyra to reach<sup>5</sup> him. 8. They remained in Rome almost two years until Metellus set out for the province. 9. I should have preferred<sup>6</sup> to stay in some town or other<sup>7</sup> until I was sent for. 10. We are ready to bear toil and burdens if we only gain the victory. 11. If he is waiting until I bring him the newspaper<sup>8</sup> let him begone. 12. I told them that you would promise everything so long as you were afraid. 13. Before I speak of the misfortunes of Sicily it seems to me that I ought to say a few words about the dignity, the antiquity, and the value of the province. 14. Why should you despair before you try? 15. The Achaeans did not dare to begin the war before<sup>9</sup> the ambassadors had returned from Rome. 16. He accomplished the matter before<sup>10</sup> any one suspected he was going to attempt it. 17. He will hear that the province has been decreed him before he can possibly<sup>11</sup> have suspected that there has been time<sup>12</sup> enough for that. 18. I will<sup>13</sup> reply, indeed, but not before you reply to me.

<sup>1</sup> 345, R. 1. <sup>2</sup> *luctari*. <sup>3</sup> What is the effect of the negative antecedent? <sup>4</sup> *se comparare*. <sup>5</sup> *assequi*. <sup>6</sup> 258. <sup>7</sup> 'or other' is the English, not the Latin idiom. <sup>8</sup> *acta diurna*. <sup>9</sup> Take the point of view of the Achaeans. <sup>10</sup> We infer that no one suspected it. <sup>11</sup> Use *posse*. <sup>12</sup> = 'time has been given.' <sup>13</sup> Notice the assurance of the statement.



*B.*

22. 1. Beware lest in striving to reach the top<sup>1</sup> you fall down along with the boughs you have grasped. 2. While the elephants were being carried across, Hannibal had sent five hundred cavalry to the Roman camp to reconnoitre.<sup>2</sup> 3. While the Romans were busy with those preparations<sup>3</sup> and consultations<sup>3</sup> Saguntum was being besieged with might and main. 4. I am come to take away some commentaries of Aristotle to read when I am<sup>4</sup> at leisure. 5. Do you wait here a little while for me until I come out! 6. Hannibal went with his army from Spain to Italy and defeated the Romans with small forces until at length he was compelled to leave Italy with great loss. 7. Until a ship returns to the place whence it was obtained,<sup>5</sup> it belongs<sup>6</sup> not to its owner but to the sailors. 8. Each general was waiting to see<sup>7</sup> whether the forces of the enemy would try to cross the river. 9. I told him that you had waited for his arrival as long as you could. 10. I promised that so long as you lived you should be not only defended<sup>8</sup> but also respected.<sup>8</sup> 11. Before I speak of the accusation itself I will say a few words about the accusers. 12. All the enemy turned their backs and did not cease to run until they arrived at the river Rhine. 13. I shall rein in my horses before<sup>9</sup> I get to the end of life. 14. In regard to Carthage, I shall not cease to be apprehensive until<sup>10</sup> I know that it is destroyed. 15. A careful physician before<sup>11</sup> attempting to apply a remedy to a sick man ought to make himself acquainted with his disease. 16. Brutus requested me to correct his speech before publication.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *cacumen*. <sup>2</sup> *speculari*. <sup>3</sup> It is often convenient to translate a Latin verb by a phrase with an abstract substantive in English. <sup>4</sup> 511, R. 3. <sup>5</sup> *sumere*. <sup>6</sup> 366. <sup>7</sup> Remember 460, I, b. <sup>8</sup> Use Infinitive with *fore*. <sup>9</sup> Take the point of view of the principal verb. <sup>10</sup> He is sure that it will be destroyed. <sup>11</sup> It may turn out upon diagnosis that the sick man needs no remedy.

## C.

23. 1. While I was standing before my door a certain acquaintance came up<sup>1</sup> to me. 2. The consul kept the enemy busy<sup>2</sup> so long as any daylight remained. 3. The consul caused such bewilderment by his attack that while some<sup>3</sup> were running<sup>4</sup> out in one place, some in another,<sup>3</sup> to resist the attack<sup>5</sup> of the enemy, the gate which he had assailed first was captured. 4. If the people themselves drive out<sup>6</sup> a tyrant, they are inclined to moderation<sup>7</sup> only so long as they rejoice in their own achievement. 5. Wait here until I bring the money out to you. 6. I shall not be able to rest until I ascertain<sup>6</sup> how you are. 7. The Thracians did not move a jot until the Romans passed<sup>8</sup> by. 8. Caesar determined to tarry in Gaul until he knew that the legions were posted and the winter quarters fortified. 9. They rested the following day to let<sup>9</sup> the prefect meanwhile<sup>9</sup> inspect the youth of the city. 10. What are you waiting for?<sup>10</sup> 11. He waited at anchor until the ninth hour for the rest of the ships to collect at that point.<sup>11</sup> 12. He thought I would wait for the moon to wane. 13. Or are we waiting until not even a trace is left of the states of Asia? 14. I beseech you not to repudiate what I shall say before I explain of what<sup>12</sup> nature it is. 15. Although<sup>13</sup> I understand what he is ready to say, yet I shall make no counter-remark<sup>14</sup> before he has said it. 16. Before I reply to him about the other matters I will say a few words on friendship. 17. It is better to give before you are asked.<sup>15</sup> 18. You will be conquered long before you perceive that you are conquered. 19. He got together an army before any one suspected<sup>16</sup> he was thinking of doing so.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *obviā*. <sup>2</sup> Involved in 'kept' (*tenere*). <sup>3</sup> 319; translate 'some by one (way), some by another.' <sup>4</sup> Remember that *dum* tends to resist Attraction; 655, R. 3. <sup>5</sup> *vis*. <sup>6</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>7</sup> *moderatus*; use the comparative; 297. <sup>8</sup> They were waiting for the Romans to pass. <sup>9</sup> = 'while the prefect should.' <sup>10</sup> Use *ut*; 470. <sup>11</sup> *eo*. <sup>12</sup> *qualis*. <sup>13</sup> *etsi*. <sup>14</sup> *contra disputare*, 'to make a counter-remark.' <sup>15</sup> You will thus escape being asked. <sup>16</sup> So no one suspected. <sup>17</sup> = 'of this.'

## D.

24. 1. In his desire<sup>1</sup> to retain a few slaves he lost all his fortune and his liberty. 2. Cato as long as he lived increased in reputation<sup>2</sup> for virtue. 3. The listeners<sup>3</sup> used to defend their own opinion as long as they could. 4. I am waiting in Arcanum until I find out those things. 5. Metellus found in Rhodes an honorable retreat, and<sup>4</sup> gave himself up to literature and philosophy until he was recalled<sup>5</sup> to his country by the authority of the senate and the order of the people. 6. At last Piso begged to stay in the citadel after giving up his arms, while Caesar was being consulted whom he should give<sup>6</sup> Syria to. 7. He waited to get news from the army. 8. He thought it was the height<sup>7</sup> of folly to wait until the forces of the enemy increased. 9. Caecina and his friends thought it best to make the attempt, so long as it appeared that it could be done in safety.<sup>8</sup> 10. Let my friends perish, so long as my enemies go down too. 11. It is never base to be overcome, provided that you do not throw away your arms. 12. Before I begin to speak of the state, I shall make a few complaints<sup>9</sup> about Antonius' outrage of yesterday. 13. The feelings are often engrossed by<sup>10</sup> angry passions before reason can<sup>11</sup> provide against their being engrossed. 14. These conversed mildly and quietly with one another before beginning<sup>12</sup> the fight. 15. I shall have lived with glory, in case anything happens<sup>13</sup> to me before I come<sup>14</sup> to see this great evil. 16. The Romans wished to protect the Saguntines, but Hannibal took their town before the Romans came<sup>15</sup> to their help.

<sup>1</sup> See above, Ex. 22, Note 3. <sup>2</sup> *laus*; remember that a substantive is construed, as a rule, with one case only. <sup>3</sup> These were transient listeners; 624. R. <sup>4</sup> Omit by using a Participle. <sup>5</sup> Observe the difference of attitude in this and the following sentence: Metellus was not expectant, Piso was. <sup>6</sup> *permittere*. <sup>7</sup> *summus*. <sup>8</sup> *salvo capite*. <sup>9</sup> Use verb. <sup>10</sup> 214, R. 2. <sup>11</sup> Be careful about the tense. <sup>12</sup> The result of the conversation might have been a decision not to fight. <sup>13</sup> Study the three verbs of Happening: *accidere, contingere, evenire*. <sup>14</sup> Omit. <sup>15</sup> So they did not come.



## 7. CUM.

G. 578-588; A. & G. 325, 326 (545-549); B. 288-290, 286 (2), 309 (3); H. 598-601; H. & B. 519 (2), 521 (1), 524-526, 550, 551, 564, 566-569; L. 1859-1881; W. 535-539, 542, 571.

The first question to be asked in writing a sentence with *Cum* is whether this sentence *dates* the principal sentence or not. If it does the Indicative is to be used, otherwise the Subjunctive. Remember that *Cum* of date can take *any tense* of the Indicative; the question is merely of the *kind* of tense. In this connection do not lose sight of Iterative Action (584) and Lapses of Time (580, R. 3). *Cum inversum* is also worth looking at, and *cum—tum* (588). In the case of Circumstantial *Cum* it is noteworthy that in the *present* Sphere the *historical Cum* is not needed, and the *causal* and *concessive alone* appear. Remember that the presence of a temporal adverb, as *iam*, usually means Temporal *Cum* but *not always*.

## A.

25. 1. He who does not ward off an injury nor repel <sup>1</sup> it <sup>2</sup> when he can, acts unjustly. 2. How did you look <sup>3</sup> when you saw those very men out of whose property you were presenting <sup>4</sup> your friend <sup>5</sup> with a golden ring? 3. When you were openly enrolling not merely freemen but also slaves, of course you were not preparing for <sup>6</sup> violence. 4. What will be your judgment when we have <sup>7</sup> laid aside our arms and they have not put down theirs? 5. It is ten years that I have been living <sup>8</sup> in the country. 6. You have granted me enough in granting <sup>9</sup> that disgrace seems to you a greater evil <sup>10</sup> than pain. 7. The states of Greece all lost the command because each one <sup>11</sup> wanted to command. 8. As they were unable longer to sustain the attack of our men they withdrew to the mountain. 9. Two young men who without <sup>12</sup> being initiated had entered the sanctuary of Ceres were brought before the high-priest, and <sup>13</sup> although it was clear that they had entered by mistake were put to death. 10. So great a fear fell upon them that although Messana had a garrison of a legion the town was scarcely defended. 11. Though the battle <sup>14</sup> was fought from the seventh hour until evening, the enemy could not be driven from their position. 12. The envoys who had been sent to Labici having brought back an uncertain response, <sup>15</sup> the Tusculans were instructed <sup>16</sup> to be careful that no new disturbance arose at Labici. 13. The soldiers were with difficulty kept from flight since the rumor had gone through the camp that their army had been cut to pieces and <sup>17</sup> all the youth of Etruria were victorious and not far distant.

<sup>1</sup> *propulsare*. <sup>2</sup> The Roman has no 'it,' but must either omit or use a proper form. <sup>3</sup> = 'What face(*os*) had you?' <sup>4</sup> 348. <sup>5</sup> 306. <sup>6</sup> *parare* is a Transitive verb. <sup>7</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>8</sup> The tense depends upon whether the action is still continuing (230) or completed. <sup>9</sup> Coincident Action has various forms; 513, N. 3. <sup>10</sup> The Comparative has varied translations. <sup>11</sup> *singulus*. <sup>12</sup> *non initiatus*. <sup>13</sup> Avoid by using a Participle. <sup>14</sup> Impersonal. <sup>15</sup> *dubius*. <sup>16</sup> *negotium dare*. <sup>17</sup> Omit by using Abl. Absolute.

## B.

26. 1. When a wise man is derided<sup>1</sup> by the foolish rabble he will not be indignant. 2. When you were inviting your friends into the province and presenting them with<sup>2</sup> golden rings did you not consider that an account would have to be rendered for<sup>3</sup> their actions? 3. You were mistaken<sup>4</sup> when you thought that I would have daily greater honors in the state. 4. When the prisoners have been slain<sup>5</sup> with the axe, their bodies shall be cast to<sup>6</sup> the wild beasts. 5. I have often heard my father say<sup>7</sup> that he had never been able to find a scholar that equalled you in diligence.<sup>8</sup> 6. It is six months since any one set<sup>9</sup> foot in this house. 7. Zopyrus, as no one doubted<sup>10</sup> his fidelity, was received into the city and unanimously<sup>11</sup> appointed leader. 8. As all the roads were beset by the soldiers of Afranius,<sup>12</sup> Caesar ordered his men to build ships. 9. When the Germans saw that their men were being slaughtered, they threw away their arms and burst forth from the camp. 10. I do not consider Marcus Regulus unfortunate, for although his body was captured<sup>13</sup> and tortured by the Punics, his soul could not be captured. 11. Cicero himself, though in the most delicate health, would not reserve to himself even the night for<sup>14</sup> rest. 12. The line had already given way,<sup>15</sup> but the flight of the enemy was checked<sup>16</sup> by their confused mass, when suddenly a down-pour<sup>17</sup> of rain broke off an assured victory. 13. Since that region was as it were the gate to Etruria, the Etrurians were interested<sup>18</sup> in occupying it when they had anything new on foot,<sup>19</sup> and the Romans in recovering and holding it.

<sup>1</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>2</sup> 348. <sup>3</sup> Construe with 'account'; what case? <sup>4</sup> *se fallere*. <sup>5</sup> *percutere*. <sup>6</sup> Use the Dative; why? <sup>7</sup> 580, R. 2. <sup>8</sup> ' = your diligence.' <sup>9</sup> See Ex. 25, Note 8. <sup>10</sup> *dubito* takes *de* in this sense. <sup>11</sup> *omnium suffragiis*. <sup>12</sup> Use an adjective in *-anus*; 182, 5. <sup>13</sup> That is, capture of body did not mean capture of soul; hence Imperfect. <sup>14</sup> *ad*. <sup>15</sup> *rem inclinari*. <sup>16</sup> Use active. <sup>17</sup> = 'a poured out rain (storm).' <sup>18</sup> *cura est*. <sup>19</sup> *moliri*.



## C.

27. 1. Conon was general at the end<sup>1</sup> of the Peloponnesian war, when the forces of the Athenians were vanquished by Lysander at Aegospotami.<sup>2</sup> 2. When glowing plates and the other tortures were being applied to him, were you not moved by the weeping even of the Roman citizens who were then present? 3. When you heard the names, did it seem to you that a general's staff<sup>3</sup> was being read out or the band of an unprincipled robber? 4. When I have<sup>4</sup> disclosed what is being done, it will be easy to determine what opinion you are<sup>5</sup> to follow. 5. The time will<sup>6</sup> come when you will feel the loss<sup>7</sup> of such brave allies. 6. A boy finding an oar as he was<sup>8</sup> walking on the shore became eager to build a ship. 7. Hoping<sup>9</sup> that my friend would return, I remained in the city; but receiving the intelligence that he was detained at Brundisium by sickness, I departed. 8. Labienus feared no danger<sup>10</sup> for himself or his legions as he was ensconced in a camp well fortified by nature and by art.<sup>11</sup> 9. As they desired to adduce some proof of their peril, they reported to Caesar that about<sup>12</sup> 30,000 arrows had been shot against the fortress. 10. Man does not need the strength<sup>13</sup> of the elephant, as he is endowed with reason. 11. Before that time no one had deserted from Caesar to Pompey, whereas almost daily they deserted from Pompey to Caesar. 12. The crowd was threatening<sup>14</sup> to break open the prison, when Manlius was freed from his bonds by decree of the Senate. 13. As they had neither power left<sup>15</sup> to<sup>16</sup> fight nor place for refuge they were all cut down to a man.

<sup>1</sup> 291, I, R. 2. <sup>2</sup> *Aegospotami*. <sup>3</sup> *consilium*. <sup>4</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>5</sup> In the Indirect Question the Subjunctive may represent an Original Subjunctive. <sup>6</sup> 580, R. 1. <sup>7</sup> *desiderare*. <sup>8</sup> 'Finding' is the important point as compared with walking; hence 'when the boy, walking, etc., found, etc.' <sup>9</sup> In English, participial usage is easier than in Latin. <sup>10</sup> = 'feared nothing about the danger of.' <sup>11</sup> *manus*. <sup>12</sup> *circiter*. <sup>13</sup> Plural. <sup>14</sup> Remember that a Verb of Threatening or Promising is a Verb of Saying, and be careful of the tense of the Infinitive. <sup>15</sup> *superesse*. <sup>16</sup> *ad*.

## D.

28. 1. Tarquin was making preparations<sup>1</sup> to surround the city with<sup>2</sup> a wall when the Sabine war interrupted his undertaking. 2. When you were draining the treasury and robbing<sup>3</sup> Italy of its youth, what drove you on except your blind lust for booty? 3. Was Marius more brilliant when Glaucia was praising him or when afterwards in anger<sup>4</sup> he was abusing him? 4. The rewards that we promised to give<sup>5</sup> the soldiers in case the state were<sup>6</sup> recovered must be paid with interest<sup>7</sup> when the time comes. 5. There was a time when<sup>8</sup> I too thought that we should recover our liberty. 6. As Pyrrhus was besieging Argos he perished by a blow<sup>9</sup> with a stone. 7. When Perseus succeeded his father on the throne<sup>10</sup> he stirred up all the tribes of the Gauls against the Romans. 8. The fight<sup>11</sup> was long and bitter since the enemy thought that the safety of the whole of Aquitania lay<sup>12</sup> in their bravery. 9. Terrified by the sudden tumult and thinking that the enemy were within their gates, they rushed forth from the town. 10. He did not seek honors, although they were open to him on account of his position. 11. The number of our cavalry was 5,000, whereas the enemy had not more than<sup>13</sup> 800 horsemen. 12. While this ought to be done by all who contemplate<sup>14</sup> entering upon an honorable life, no one, I am inclined to think,<sup>15</sup> ought to do so more than you. 13. Already the soldiers were losing<sup>16</sup> their strength, when suddenly the Samnite cavalry, having learned<sup>17</sup> that the baggage of the Romans was left without protection, made an attack on it. 14. Although the loss had been even,<sup>18</sup> nevertheless the Romans got the credit<sup>19</sup> of a defeat on account of the loss of<sup>4</sup> some of their knights.

<sup>1</sup> Use verb. <sup>2</sup> 348. <sup>3</sup> *orbare*. <sup>4</sup> Participle. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. 27, Note 14. <sup>6</sup> Abl. Abs. <sup>7</sup> *cumulate*. <sup>8</sup> 580, R. 1. <sup>9</sup> = 'struck'; use *icere*. <sup>10</sup> *patris imperio succedere*. <sup>11</sup> Impersonal. <sup>12</sup> *poni in*. <sup>13</sup> 296, R. 4. <sup>14</sup> *cogitare*. <sup>15</sup> See 457, 2. <sup>16</sup> *desse*. <sup>17</sup> Do not use Participle. <sup>18</sup> *anceps*. <sup>19</sup> = 'report of defeat turned against (*in*) the Romans.'

## 8. LOGICAL AND IDEAL CONDITIONS.

G. 589-596; A. & G. 304-307, 337 (512-516, 589); B. 301-303, 305, 306, 319, 320; H. 572-578, 646; H. & B. 573-580, 536; L. 2025-2090, 2109-2111, 2326-2328, 2330; W. 550-556, 613-616, 559-562.

In Logical Conditions it is well to remember that there is no restriction as to time or tense; the only consideration is whether the Conclusion follows the Condition irresistibly. No indication is given as to the reality or non-reality of the Condition, but for the purpose of the reasoning it is assumed to be a fact. Observe that in the Conclusion the Subjunctive *may* be employed in those forms which can be used independently (257-265). Notice *sive—sive* and do not neglect 591 with the Remarks.

In Ideal Conditions observe that the Condition, being regarded as undecided, has of necessity a Future effect, but that nothing is indicated as to its *realization*; further, that when the Point of View is shifted to the Past (596, 2) there is a confusion with the Unreal, which accounts for the rarity of the Ideal in the Past.



## A.

29. 1. If virtues are equal<sup>1</sup> to one another it follows that vices are also equal. 2. What does it concern me what you think of a book which will not be published<sup>2</sup> unless liberty is<sup>3</sup> recovered? 3. Do not interpret<sup>4</sup> their misfortune as a cause for blame<sup>4</sup> unless perhaps you think that those who have fallen among robbers are to be blamed if they do anything under compulsion.<sup>5</sup> 4. You will easily be able to perceive that Sicily is lost to<sup>6</sup> the Roman people if you do not recover it by the condemnation of Verres. 5. If I am ever jostled in a crowd I do not blame the man who is at the top<sup>7</sup> of the Sacred Way but the one who runs against me. 6. Whether you follow the Peripatetics or the Stoics you must confess that there is in virtue guarantee<sup>8</sup> enough for<sup>9</sup> a happy life. 7. What good man would hesitate to meet death for his country if he should expect<sup>10</sup> to do her good? 8. If you should be prevented by sickness from coming to me in the country I beg you to write me soon how you are.<sup>11</sup> 9. Nothing is more honorable and high-minded than to despise money if you have none; if you have it, to devote it<sup>12</sup> to liberality and well-doing. 10. There was one road in case they wished to return to Rome, another if they were making for<sup>13</sup> Brundisium. 11. They asked, if there was a war in the province why they were<sup>14</sup> quiet; if the war was at an end,<sup>15</sup> why they were not carried back to Italy. 12. Syphax said that if Scipio did not keep<sup>16</sup> his army away from Africa it would be necessary for him to fight for the land in which he was born.

<sup>1</sup> *par*; see 221. <sup>2</sup> *prodire*. <sup>3</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>4</sup> *convertere in culpam*. <sup>5</sup> = 'compelled.' <sup>6</sup> Disadvantage. <sup>7</sup> 291, I, R. 2. <sup>8</sup> *praesidium*; see 369. <sup>9</sup> *ad*. <sup>10</sup> The Future Periphrastic indicates Expectation. <sup>11</sup> *quid agis*? 'how are you?' <sup>12</sup> *auferre*. <sup>13</sup> *petere*. <sup>14</sup> 651, R. 1. <sup>15</sup> Use the impersonal passive of *debellare*. <sup>16</sup> *abstinere*.

## B.

30. 1. If I have said anything by way of jest<sup>1</sup> do not turn it into a serious matter. 2. Spare the dignity of Lentulus if he ever spared his own reputation. 3. Do you think you can enjoy those revenues<sup>3</sup> unless you keep<sup>2</sup> those who are the source of them<sup>3</sup> free from disaster? 4. No rule can be safe except when it is fortified by good will. 5. Do not call me king hereafter, lest you be laughed at; unless perchance it seems royal to you to live in such a way as to be the servant of no man. 6. See in what year Piso was quaestor or tribune; should neither hit,<sup>4</sup> see whether he lived at all<sup>5</sup> at the time of that war. 7. Would a physician, when a patient had been turned<sup>6</sup> over to another physician, be angry with the physician who had<sup>6</sup> succeeded him if he were to change some things that he had<sup>6</sup> prescribed<sup>7</sup> in his treatment<sup>8</sup>? 8. If a philosopher were to add eloquence to his other qualifications<sup>9</sup> I should not despise it; should he not have it, I should not greatly demand it. 9. There was a hill exactly opposite to<sup>10</sup> the town; but if our troops held this the enemy seemed likely to cut them off from the great part of their water supply. 10. The prisoners told the king that he would find out whether they were brave or no, if he were general of the Athenians and Chares general of the Macedonians. 11. The Campanians sent envoys to Hannibal to<sup>11</sup> announce that the consuls were a day's march off and that if he did not hasten to their aid<sup>12</sup> Capua would come into the power of the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> *per iocum*. <sup>2</sup> Be careful of the tense, for *posse* has the effect of a Future. <sup>3</sup> *fructui esse*, 'to be a source of revenue'; substitute a colorless word for 'revenues.' <sup>4</sup> *quadrare*. <sup>5</sup> *omnino*. <sup>6</sup> Watch the tense. <sup>7</sup> *constituere*. <sup>8</sup> *in curando*. <sup>9</sup> *ars*. <sup>10</sup> *e regione* with the Genitive. <sup>11</sup> 630. <sup>12</sup> *propere subvenire*.

## C.

31. 1. If we do<sup>1</sup> not lop off the passions, in vain shall we endeavor to live happily. 2. Limbs are amputated if they begin<sup>2</sup> to be without blood. 3. Lucius Sulla was lucky, if there can be any good luck in crime. 4. You will never prove that it is not right<sup>3</sup> to ask for money unless you show that it is not lawful.<sup>3</sup> 5. If that was the blood of enemies, great was the loyalty of the soldiers; but it was a monstrous crime if it was the blood of citizens. 6. Of Homer, the prince of poets, almost nothing is known except what nobody would be likely<sup>4</sup> to believe, namely,<sup>5</sup> that he was born blind, unless perhaps we believe that a blind man could have described so many various<sup>6</sup> things so truly and so clearly. 7. What reason can you give for<sup>7</sup> defending some things and being indifferent<sup>8</sup> to others unless perhaps you are willing to confess that you measure everything by your own advantage? 8. "We have to do," said he, "with an enemy that cannot bear either good or bad fortune; whether he vanquishes<sup>2</sup> or is vanquished he shows the same savage temper."<sup>9</sup> 9. Neither are those promises to be kept which are apt<sup>10</sup> to be useless to those to whom you have made them, nor, if they would injure you more than benefit him to whom you have made them, is it contrary to your duty to prefer the greater to the less. 10. He had to send away many of the soldiers in case he wished the business to be accomplished. 11. They ordered him to be arrested by a constable and taken to prison if he could not give security.

<sup>1</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>2</sup> 567. <sup>3</sup> *oportere; licere*. <sup>4</sup> 'Likelihood' in the Indic. is expressed by the Periphrastic, but in the Subjunctive this is not necessary, as every tense of the Subjunctive has a Future side.

<sup>5</sup> Omit. <sup>6</sup> 481, I. <sup>7</sup> = 'What can you say why.' <sup>8</sup> *curare*. <sup>9</sup> *ferocitas*.

<sup>10</sup> Involved in the mood; 631, I.

## D.

**32.** 1. The book-keeping<sup>1</sup> of benefits is simple : so much is spent, if something<sup>2</sup> comes back it is a gain, if it does not come back it is not a loss. 2. If you desert<sup>3</sup> and betray Marcus Brutus, what citizen will you ever honor or favor ? unless perchance you think that those who bestowed the kingly crown<sup>4</sup> are to be preserved, those who took away the name of king to be deserted. 3. If they deserted their own consul they are to be blamed, but if they left the enemy of the state they are rightly praised. 4. If I do not use<sup>5</sup> up all the time that is allowed<sup>5</sup> me by law you will complain that Verres is being beset because the accuser is unwilling to speak as long as he may. 5. If what we wish happens we shall rejoice ; if not, we shall bear the result<sup>6</sup> with equanimity. 6. I have received a silly note<sup>7</sup> from Peter, unless perhaps everything that you<sup>8</sup> do not like seems silly. 7. History at that time was nothing except the putting together of annals. 8. Whether you linger<sup>3</sup> or hasten you will not find him at home. 9. If you were to know me well<sup>9</sup> enough you would not think that I could betray my country. 10. The day would fail me did I desire to enumerate how many good men have had bad luck,<sup>10</sup> and equally so<sup>11</sup> if I were to relate how many evil men have had the best of fortune. 11. In the event<sup>12</sup> of a battle the nearness of the camp offered an easy refuge to the vanquished. 12. They said that if they knew that the Romans would pardon them they would not refuse to surrender.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ratio*. <sup>2</sup> 107, I, R.; 'something' is more emphatic than 'anything.'  
<sup>3</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>4</sup> Observe the law of sequence, and use *diadema imponere*. <sup>5</sup> *concedere*. <sup>6</sup> Omit. <sup>7</sup> *litterulae*. <sup>8</sup> Who is meant by 'you'? <sup>9</sup> 'well' is an English addition. <sup>10</sup> *alicui male evenire*. <sup>11</sup> *nec minus*. <sup>12</sup> = 'if a battle were joined.' <sup>13</sup> *se tradere*.



## 9. CONDITIONS OF UNREALITY AND COMPARISON.

G. 597-602; A. & G. 308-312, 337 (517, 518, 521-524, 589); B. 304, 305, 307, 321, 322; H. 579-584, 647, 648; H. & B. 581, 582 (3), 504 (3); L. 2091-2108, 2117-2122, 2329, 2330-2334; W. 557, 558, 617-619, 566-568.

In Unreal Conditions the chief difficulty is in the use of the Indicative in the Apodosis, hence 597, R. 3, should be carefully studied. When the Apodosis follows a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the structure is complicated and also requires close attention (R. 5). The use of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative is neat and idiomatic, and in the case of the Pluperfect has an apparent resemblance to the English (R. 2).

In Conditional Sentences of Comparison the most important matter is that the law of Sequence overrides that of the Condition, as a rule.

## A.

**33.** 1. If Scipio had lived to his hundredth year would he regret his great age? 2. Quintus would have stayed longer with me if I had been desirous<sup>1</sup> of it. 3. If Antiochus had consented<sup>2</sup> to follow<sup>3</sup> the counsels of Hannibal he would have fought for<sup>4</sup> empire nearer to the Tiber than to Thermopylae. 4. Who doubts that if we had been energetic<sup>5</sup> in bringing help to the Saguntines we should have averted the whole war? 5. That which we were individually<sup>6</sup> going to do if our houses had burned down, do we now refuse to do as a body<sup>6</sup> in this conflagration of the state? 6. We had gained a brilliant victory if Lepidus had not been eager to destroy<sup>7</sup> everything and perish<sup>7</sup> himself with his men. 7. No one doubted that if the general had come immediately he might easily have crushed<sup>8</sup> the conspiracy of the soldiers. 8. I do not doubt that if Sulpicius had been able to report the issue<sup>9</sup> of his mission, his return would have been salutary to the state. 9. Tell me what you would have advised if you had been asked your opinion on this matter. 10. He loves you as if he had lived with you. 11. Xerxes sent 4,000 armed men to Delphi to plunder the temple of Apollo as if he were carrying on war not only with the Greeks, but with the immortal gods. 12. Corrupt men pass their time<sup>10</sup> as if they despised your honors; but seek them as if they had lived honorably. 13. Since you write me nothing, I shall regard it just<sup>11</sup> as if you had written that there was nothing to write. 14. Do not look for<sup>12</sup> arguments from me in this matter, as if there were some doubt about it.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *velle*; the Imperfects *vellem*, *nollem*, *mallem*, as well as *possem*, have the effect of Pluperfects, from the potential side (258). <sup>2</sup> *velle*. <sup>3</sup> *uti*. <sup>4</sup> *de*. <sup>5</sup> = 'had brought help energetically.' <sup>6</sup> *singuli*; *universi*. <sup>7</sup> The Roman likes the play of words on *perdere* and *perire*. <sup>8</sup> *opprimere*. <sup>9</sup> Use *renuntiare*, 'to report (the issue of).' <sup>10</sup> *aetatem agere*. <sup>11</sup> *proinde habere*. <sup>12</sup> *expectare*. <sup>13</sup> = 'as if anything were doubtful.'

## B.

34. 1. Most people cannot do a thing because they will<sup>1</sup> not; they could<sup>2</sup> if they would. 2. You would not have dared to provoke me by abuse if you did not rely on those swords that we see. 3. The Gauls had nearly taken the Capitol, had not the geese by their noise<sup>3</sup> waked the soldiers out of sleep. 4. You ought to cherish him as a father if you had any filial affection.<sup>4</sup> 5. We had gained a glorious victory if Lepidus had not received Antonius when<sup>5</sup> he was unarmed and a fugitive. 6. If our friend had followed<sup>6</sup> the directions of the physician he must needs have died. 7. It is not doubtful that if Caesar had not perished by an untimely death the condition of Rome under the empire would have been far<sup>7</sup> different. 8. If you had been willing to do it, I do not doubt that the whole multitude would have gone over<sup>8</sup> to you. 9. He gave so tardily that he would have done a greater favor<sup>9</sup> if he had refused quickly. 10. Those things which are very difficult are often to be regarded just as if<sup>10</sup> they could not be done. 11. Soldiers enjoy present abundance as if they knew for certain<sup>11</sup> that they would never be plagued<sup>12</sup> by want again.<sup>12</sup> The army of the Samnites drew up in line of battle, as if there was going to be no delay in fighting.<sup>13</sup> 13. It is foolish to pluck out one's<sup>14</sup> hair in mourning—as if grief were lightened by baldness. 14. He was ordered to leave his country just as if he had been convicted of a crime.

<sup>1</sup> *nolle*. <sup>2</sup> Use *quire*. <sup>3</sup> *clangor*. <sup>4</sup> *pietas*. <sup>5</sup> A temporal clause is frequently expressed by an adjective in predicate attribution; 325.

<sup>6</sup> *obsequi*. <sup>7</sup> *longe*. <sup>8</sup> *se convertere*. <sup>9</sup> English is colored; in Latin merely = 'would have conferred (*praestare*) more.' <sup>10</sup> See above, Ex. 33, Note 11. <sup>11</sup> *exploratum habere*. <sup>12</sup> See 248; use *urgere*. <sup>13</sup> 360, R. 1.

<sup>14</sup> Dative of Disadvantage; 345, R. 1; see also 309, 3.

## C.

35. 1. May I die if I should be more joyful if that had happened to me. 2. If you had not hastened we should all have had <sup>1</sup> to die. 3. Antigonus would have saved Eumenes when he was captured if his men had allowed <sup>2</sup> him to do so, but those who were about him did not suffer it because they saw that they would all be of little value by the side of <sup>3</sup> Eumenes. 4. The Volsci had already got their auxiliaries ready <sup>4</sup> to <sup>5</sup> send to the Latins, had not the Roman dictator made haste. 5. Those also who had remained were all on the point <sup>6</sup> of leaving their fields had not Metellus sent a letter to them from Rome. 6. It is an interesting question <sup>7</sup> what would have been the result to Rome if she had had a war <sup>8</sup> with Alexander. 7. No one doubts that if the city had been taken the enemy would have been conquered. 8. He loved you as if he had lived with you. 9. You say the gods neglect less important things: as if I had complained about the loss of Rutilius' estate, not the loss of his life. 10. I consider him to be the best who forgives others <sup>9</sup> as if he himself sinned daily, but <sup>10</sup> who refrains from sin as if he forgave none. 11. Plato said that those who contended with each other <sup>11</sup> which should manage the state acted in the same way as if sailors were to contend which one of them <sup>12</sup> should be pilot. 12. The fortune of the Germans was on this account the more grievous because they feared the cruelty of their leader, though <sup>13</sup> absent, just as if he were present in person.

<sup>1</sup> 597, R. 3. <sup>2</sup> Use *per aliquem licet*. <sup>3</sup> 417, 9. <sup>4</sup> *comparare*. <sup>5</sup> 630. <sup>6</sup> One of the common renderings of the Future Participle. <sup>7</sup> = 'it is pleasing (*libet*) to inquire.' <sup>8</sup> *bellare*; see 208, 2. 'Rome' in a sentence like this is the 'Roman State,' *res Romana*. <sup>9</sup> What is the difference between *ceteri*, *reliqui*, and *alii*? <sup>10</sup> 636, N. 2, a. <sup>11</sup> 221. <sup>12</sup> Will it be the reflexive or the demonstrative? 521, R. 5. <sup>13</sup> 609.



## D.

**36.** 1. "If I had conquered you, Scipio," quoth Hannibal, "I should put myself above all other generals." 2. If my influence had prevailed, you would be to-day in poverty,<sup>1</sup> we in freedom.<sup>1</sup> 3. The commonwealth might<sup>2</sup> be perpetual if we<sup>3</sup> lived according to the constitution.<sup>4</sup> 4. If Sestius, who was left for dead,<sup>5</sup> had been really killed, were you going to take up arms? 5. Even if I had never drawn sword in Asia, still I had deserved a triumph for<sup>6</sup> the two battles in Thrace. 6. If she had not met her end<sup>7</sup> at this time, still she would have had to die a few years later, as she was born a human being. 7. I do not doubt that if you had followed<sup>8</sup> my advice you would not be in such poverty. 8. You show what sort of a consul you would have been at that time had matters turned out in this way. 9. Solon gave the Athenians such excellent and useful laws that if they had been willing to keep<sup>8</sup> them always, they would have had an enduring empire. 10. Those who injure some in order to be liberal to others are guilty of the same<sup>9</sup> injustice as if they appropriated other people's property.<sup>10</sup> 11. My brother treats me just as if I were a king. 12. Agesilaus praised the design of those who had occupied<sup>11</sup> the place as if they had done so with good intention.<sup>12</sup> 13. Certain people think that there is no God on this account, because he cannot<sup>13</sup> be seen, just as if, for example,<sup>14</sup> we could see our mind itself. 14. They defend Naevis as if their own fortune and honor were at stake.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use verbs. <sup>2</sup> 'Might' is a regular translation of *posse* and frequently indicates possibility in English. <sup>3</sup> 208, 2. <sup>4</sup> *patria instituta*; see 397. <sup>5</sup> = 'killed.' <sup>6</sup> Causal according to 408, N. 6. <sup>7</sup> *diem obire*. <sup>8</sup> *uti*. <sup>9</sup> = 'are in the same.' <sup>10</sup> = 'convert (*convertere*) other people's (things) to their own.' <sup>11</sup> A part of his thought. <sup>12</sup> *animus*. <sup>13</sup> What is not done often cannot be done. <sup>14</sup> Omit. <sup>15</sup> *agi*.

## 10. CONCESSIVE SENTENCES WITH SOME CONDITIONS.

G. 603-609; A. & G. 313 (526, 527); B. 308, 309; H. 585, 586; H. & B. 582 (8), 556, 310 (7), 532, 541, 604 (2); L. 1899-1907, 1963, 2116; W. 569-572.

In Concessive Sentences the large number of conjunctions is to be noticed and the different shades of meaning that they express. Observe in the case of combinations of *si* that the general principles of Conditional Sentences apply here too. *Quamquam* means *however (true it is)*; *quamvis*, *however (true it MAY BE)*, and the mood follows accordingly. Study *etsi* and *quamquam* in the sense of *and yet*. Do not forget the Sequence of Tenses with *licet* (a Present), and restrict *ut* and *ne* to argumentative sentences. Concessive *cum* has already been treated.

A.

37. 1. Even if there is nothing in glory that<sup>1</sup> it should be sought after, nevertheless it follows virtue like<sup>2</sup> its shadow. 2. There are those who<sup>3</sup> from fear of odium do not dare to speak what they feel, even if it be the best. 3. I shall say nothing further about him ; and yet I have said what I have said just as<sup>4</sup> if I were his brother, not the brother that he actually<sup>5</sup> has, but such a one as I have been accustomed to be to<sup>6</sup> my own brother. 4. Although that remark<sup>7</sup> in<sup>8</sup> Accius is made<sup>7</sup> by an impious king, still it is brilliantly said. 5. No one, no matter how<sup>9</sup> wealthy he may be, can dispense with the aid of others.<sup>10</sup> 6. Although the measure may not please me, still I shall not be able to contend against the authority of such men. 7. Though these gifts do<sup>11</sup> seem to be numerous,<sup>12</sup> many who are your equals in accomplishments have obtained more. 8. The wicked do not escape the charge<sup>13</sup> of impiety, although they may have drenched<sup>14</sup> altars with much blood. 9. Granted that this be not the case, still it is a fine show that I am proposing for myself, provided only I may<sup>15</sup> look at it with you at my side.<sup>16</sup> 10. Caesar was confident<sup>17</sup> that if he seized and fortified that hillock he would cut off his opponents from the town and the bridge, and all the provisions that they had collected<sup>18</sup> in the town. 11. It seems that if they had abstained from bloodshed they could have reached<sup>19</sup> the royal pavilion.

<sup>1</sup> An Indirect Question, *cur* ; 631, 2. <sup>2</sup> Adverb, not adjective. <sup>3</sup> 631, 1. <sup>4</sup> Use negative form : *non secus quam* ; 643. <sup>5</sup> Included in the mood. <sup>6</sup> *in* is neutral ; compare with *erga* and *adversus* ; in this sentence observe that no characterization is given by the verbs ; Cicero's own character (he is speaking) was a concrete example. <sup>7</sup> Use verb. <sup>8</sup> 416, 4. <sup>9</sup> 'No matter how' = 'however.' <sup>10</sup> Use *alienus*. <sup>11</sup> You may believe so if you like. <sup>12</sup> You cannot use *numerosus* ; why ? <sup>13</sup> Included in *impietas*. <sup>14</sup> Use *cruentare*. <sup>15</sup> *licet*. <sup>16</sup> Ablative Absolute : use *consessor*. <sup>17</sup> A continual feeling, a state of mind. <sup>18</sup> 629, R. <sup>19</sup> *pervenire*.

## B.

38. 1. Even if it were necessary to go to meet<sup>1</sup> death, I should prefer to do<sup>2</sup> so at home rather than in foreign parts. 2. Although the ground was unfavorable, nevertheless Caesar determined to attack the enemy. 3. Although I have asked you to come<sup>3</sup> to me, nevertheless I know that you cannot relieve me. 4. Although we cannot show-by-our-action as much gratitude as is due him we must nevertheless feel as much as our hearts<sup>4</sup> can hold. 5. The phrase<sup>5</sup> “Scipio will die” has such a meaning<sup>6</sup> that, although it is said of the future, it cannot turn out to be false. 6. Although they may say, “the ambassadors may set forth; still let the war be pushed,” nevertheless the very name of ambassadors will retard the progress of the war. 7. Granted that our soldiers’ courage do not fail them, nevertheless they will not be able to resist the great multitude of the enemy. 8. Though<sup>7</sup> these struggles and dangers may have carried them up to the consulship, I prefer the safe and quiet seclusion of Vergil. 9. Though<sup>8</sup> Plato produced no argument, still the weight<sup>9</sup> of his authority would crush me. 10. He said that he did not doubt that Spain was Caesar’s; that Caesar was so enraged that Metellus came very<sup>10</sup> near being put to death; that if that had been done there would have been a great massacre; that it was not done not because Caesar was not naturally cruel, but because he thought clemency was the popular course<sup>11</sup>; that if he lost the enthusiastic support<sup>12</sup> of the people he would be cruel because he would not have anything to<sup>13</sup> gain by kindness.

<sup>1</sup> *mortem oppetere*; use Gerundive. <sup>2</sup> English addition which the Latin understands. <sup>3</sup> 511, R. 3. <sup>4</sup> English often confuses the ‘heart’ with the ‘feelings.’ <sup>5</sup> May be omitted in Latin according to 204. <sup>6</sup> *vis*. <sup>7</sup> = ‘I grant you’ (*licet*). <sup>8</sup> = ‘Suppose that.’ <sup>9</sup> English fulness; ‘authority’ is sufficient in the Latin. <sup>10</sup> *prope abesse*; the effect is negative, hence see 556, second paragraph. <sup>11</sup> *popularis*. <sup>12</sup> *studium*. <sup>13</sup> 631, 2.



## C.

39. 1. Even if you had taken away from Sulla nothing but his consulship you ought<sup>1</sup> to be content with that. 2. But<sup>2</sup> few are so grateful that they think of what they have received, even if they do not see it. 3. Though<sup>3</sup> Caesar had not yet become acquainted with the plan of the enemy, still he had a suspicion that what did happen would happen. 4. However different the case of the soldiers is from yours, nevertheless I shall say nothing about the nature of this war. 5. Although their feeling may<sup>4</sup> have departed, still the dead are not without their own peculiar blessings, however they may not feel them. 6. No matter how much pleasure<sup>5</sup> you may have in the flattery of courtiers, they will notwithstanding lay plots against you. 7. After so great a multitude of the enemy has been killed—enemy, I say, however much this enemy at our hearthstone<sup>6</sup> may object,<sup>7</sup>—shall we take away from our noble leaders the name of imperator<sup>8</sup>? 8. Although I send you too often letters after the same pattern<sup>9</sup> thanking<sup>10</sup> you for honoring my recommendations so scrupulously, still I shall not grow weary<sup>11</sup> in the good<sup>12</sup> work. 9. Assuming that Socrates and Plato did<sup>13</sup> not render a reason for it, nevertheless by their very authority they would overcome these petty philosophers. 10. Pollio is very much mistaken in thinking that if Caesar had lived longer his memoirs would have been rewritten. 11. I beg you to remember that you could never have obtained your present<sup>12</sup> position<sup>14</sup> if you had not followed<sup>15</sup> my counsels.

<sup>1</sup> *oportere*; what tense?; 254, R. 2. <sup>2</sup> 'Few' is 'but few.' <sup>3</sup> The statement is a fact; hence what particle? <sup>4</sup> 605, R. 1. <sup>5</sup> 'to have pleasure in,' *delectari*. <sup>6</sup> *domesticus*. <sup>7</sup> *nolle*. <sup>8</sup> adjective. <sup>9</sup> Abl. of Quality. <sup>10</sup> 585, R. <sup>11</sup> *parcere*. <sup>12</sup> Omit. <sup>13</sup> They do. <sup>14</sup> *dignitas*. <sup>15</sup> *uti*.

## D.

40. 1. Who is not shocked by such<sup>1</sup> baseness, even if it be not likely to injure him? 2. Although I have written before what I thought ought to be written, nevertheless I thought you ought to be warned briefly at this time not to think<sup>2</sup> that you are in any particular<sup>3</sup> danger. 3. However much virtue of every kind does attract us, still justice has this effect<sup>4</sup> in an especial degree.<sup>5</sup> 4. Physicians never tell their patients that they are going to die of<sup>6</sup> their disease, though they often perceive that they will.<sup>7</sup> 5. Although there may be men who hate Carbo even after his death,<sup>8</sup> still they ought to consider not what they wanted to befall him, but what they themselves have to fear in such a case. 6. Since I have once undertaken it, though<sup>9</sup> all perils may threaten, I shall succor him. 7. Granted that Rome was founded before the time of Romulus, nevertheless the Roman historians begin with<sup>10</sup> him. 8. "There never was such a man," you will say; granted; I am discussing the question, what I want, not what I have seen. 9. They said that although they had deserved ill of<sup>11</sup> the Roman people they would be in a better condition under the Romans though<sup>12</sup> angry than they had been under the Carthaginians as friends. 10. They said that if both consuls with their armies were before Nola they would not for all that<sup>13</sup> be more of-a-match for Hannibal than they had been at<sup>14</sup> Cannae; much less<sup>15</sup> could one praetor with a few raw soldiers protect the town. 11. They said that if they had him for consul their fortunes would be better.

<sup>1</sup> Not *talis*, for 'baseness' is measured by degree. <sup>2</sup> 511, R. 3. <sup>3</sup> *proprius*. <sup>4</sup> Use *efficere*. <sup>5</sup> Merely an adverb of degree = 'especially.' <sup>6</sup> Ablative. <sup>7</sup> English fulness; the Roman stopped with 'perceive.' <sup>8</sup> 664, R. 2. <sup>9</sup> = 'granted that.' <sup>10</sup> *ab* is the regular preposition with verbs of Beginning. <sup>11</sup> *mereri de*. <sup>12</sup> 667. <sup>13</sup> *tamen*. <sup>14</sup> See above, Ex. 11, Note 11. <sup>15</sup> 482, 5, R. 2.

## 11. MISCELLANEOUS CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

G. 589-602; A. & G. 304-315, 337 (512-525, 589); B. 301-307, 319-322;  
H. 572-584, 646-648; H. & B. 573-582; L. 2015-2122, 2326-2334;  
W. 550-562, 613-619, 566-572.

Read carefully over the whole treatment of Conditional Sentences, paying attention to the details overlooked before; observe the difference between *nisi* and *si non*, and study the various phraseological uses of *si*. Notice the difference between the Ideal and Unreal forms again, and understand how the Ideal from the Point of View of the Past may be almost the same as the Unreal from the Point of View of the Present. Notice the *Oratio Obliqua* forms of the various Conditions and the forms they take after sentences requiring a Subjunctive.

## A.

41. 1. What a consul he was ! if we require prudence, one <sup>1</sup> who could in no way be deceived ; if high-mindedness, <sup>2</sup> one who would prefer death to slavery. 2. If all in this state were to be massed in one place, they would not be comparable <sup>3</sup> with Sulpicius. 3. When they were summoned <sup>4</sup> to trial, they used immediately to make their defence <sup>5</sup> if it seemed best. 4. If the law only confirmed <sup>6</sup> those things which had been given by Sulla, I would keep quiet ; if only Rullus admitted that he was a follower of Sulla. <sup>7</sup> 5. Is the condition of those witnesses such that men who were not believed <sup>8</sup> when they denied are believed when they affirm ? <sup>9</sup> if they lied then, let them teach us with what face they are accustomed to speak the truth. 6. I should never have needed a consular's medicine, if I had not fallen by a consular's wound. 7. If he comes <sup>4</sup> forward, I shall inquire of him why he brought no action <sup>10</sup> immediately ; then, if he replies <sup>4</sup> cleverly to this, I shall ask why he preferred complaining to bringing an action. 8. I do not doubt that if the king had found out <sup>11</sup> the approach of the enemy he would have crossed the river. 9. In the hearing <sup>12</sup> of many he declared that if he learned <sup>4</sup> that Clodius had been slain he would report the name of Milo. 10. Such was the fortune of battle that if the dictator had been present the affair <sup>13</sup> could have been managed better. 11. I think pardon should be granted to the others if they become <sup>4</sup> reconciled to the state. 12. Can any one doubt that if Ligarius could have been in Italy he would have held <sup>14</sup> the same opinion that his brothers held ?

<sup>1</sup> 631, 1. <sup>2</sup> = 'greatness of spirit.' <sup>3</sup> Gerundive. <sup>4</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>5</sup> *contra dicere*. <sup>6</sup> *sancire*. <sup>7</sup> *Sullanus*. <sup>8</sup> 217. <sup>9</sup> Study the difference between *dico*, *loquor*, and *aio*. <sup>10</sup> 'Bring an action,' *ago*. <sup>11</sup> *certiorem fieri*. <sup>12</sup> Ablative Absolute. <sup>13</sup> *res*. <sup>14</sup> = 'to be in the same opinion' (*sententia*).



## B.

42. 1. If there be those who<sup>1</sup> have done something at some time or other and are now silent about it, we also would forget it forever.<sup>2</sup> 2. I would not listen to wisdom herself, no matter how learned she may be, if she were to assent<sup>3</sup> to this. 3. If he lied why did he remove his accounts if they were not going to injure<sup>4</sup> you ; if he had made no lists at all, does not this show clearly that he did not attend<sup>5</sup> to his business ? 4. Even if you and myself ought to seem outsiders to the other patricians, still Torquatus would say<sup>6</sup> nothing about this flaw. 5. If the word of Marius had weight<sup>7</sup> then, let the position and deeds of the noble<sup>8</sup> man influence<sup>7</sup> you now. 6. If he had accused Sulla alone I too should do nothing else than<sup>9</sup> defend him who had been accused ; but since he assailed<sup>10</sup> me, even if my resentment did not compel me, still the cause itself would have required this speech from me. 7. There was no doubt that Spain would have plucked up courage had not the other praetor fought<sup>11</sup> many successful battles beyond the Iberus. 8. How many guards will I need if I admit you to my book-cases ? 9. The engagement was carried on with such evenness<sup>12</sup> that if the Etruscans had come up we must have suffered<sup>13</sup> a great disaster. 10. I have more of a burden than those who accused the others, if that is to be called a burden which you bear with joy. 11. The Sardinians have been persuaded that they will do nothing more pleasing to Appius than to<sup>14</sup> detract from Scaurus' reputation. 12. There was no doubt that if he had written the letter I should have been relieved<sup>15</sup> of great annoyance.

<sup>1</sup> *Si qui.* <sup>2</sup> The Perfect, by drawing attention to the completion, emphasizes the finality. <sup>3</sup> *annuere.* <sup>4</sup> *obesse.* <sup>5</sup> *gerere.* <sup>6</sup> Use *silere* in the passive. <sup>7</sup> *valere.* <sup>8</sup> 302. <sup>9</sup> 591, b, 2. <sup>10</sup> *invehi.* <sup>11</sup> *proelium facere.* <sup>12</sup> = 'equal forces.' <sup>13</sup> *accipere*; use passive. <sup>14</sup> *si.* <sup>15</sup> *levare.*

## C.

43. 1. If you want this state to be eternal you must be on your guard<sup>1</sup> against factious men. 2. You will not dare to say this, nor even if you were to desire it will it be allowed. 3. If the accused named Roscius, was it a great task<sup>2</sup> to send a letter to Roscius at Himera? You would have kept the man in close custody<sup>3</sup> until Roscius came;<sup>4</sup> then if he recognized the man you would remit a part of<sup>5</sup> the punishment; if he did not know him, you would in case it seemed good to you ordain<sup>6</sup> this law for all, that he who was not known to you should be crucified. 4. If in expressing<sup>7</sup> such an opinion the dignity of Pompey was enhanced to<sup>8</sup> the advantage of the commonwealth, certainly I should deserve<sup>9</sup> praise if it appeared that I had voted in support<sup>10</sup> of the dignity of him who had assisted<sup>11</sup> in my salvation. 5. If there be any that must be kept in durance<sup>12</sup> by the state, they are ordered to be taken to these quarries even from the other towns of Italy. 6. If I had done this, what thanks would you owe me for relinquishing<sup>13</sup> in your behalf only those things that were cheap in-my-eyes?<sup>14</sup> 7. I do not doubt that he might have come to his senses if he had followed<sup>15</sup> your advice. 8. Hannibal was so hampered by want of provisions that if he had not feared that his departure would resemble flight<sup>16</sup> he would have made for Gaul. 9. I do not doubt that if anything of that kind happens you will hurry to me. 10. I do not want any of those who are present to think that if I have kept quiet I approve the things that have been said by Accius about this law.

<sup>1</sup> *cavere*; 346, N. 2. <sup>2</sup> Omit. <sup>3</sup> *custodiae*. <sup>4</sup> The case would wait. <sup>5</sup> = 'something from.' <sup>6</sup> *sancire*. <sup>7</sup> Omit. <sup>8</sup> *non sine*. <sup>9</sup> Gerundive. <sup>10</sup> *suffragari*. <sup>11</sup> *auxilium ferre*. <sup>12</sup> *custodire*. <sup>13</sup> = 'what benefit would you have from me when I relinquished.' <sup>14</sup> Dative. <sup>15</sup> *uti*. <sup>16</sup> = 'he would have to depart with the appearance (*species*) of flight.'

*D.*

44. 1. If you are willing to listen to me, keep the control<sup>1</sup> of your liberty, your city, and your other advantages; unless perhaps you prefer to leave<sup>2</sup> all these things and settle yourselves in the pestilential district of the Campanians. 2. In a charge of this kind you-may-be-blamed for carelessness<sup>3</sup> if you defend a man whom you suspect to be guilty<sup>4</sup> of treason. 3. If I was my country's defender<sup>5</sup> then when she owed me something, what ought I to do now when I owe her everything? 4. It was not doubtful that if he walked briskly<sup>6</sup> he would arrive before dawn. 5. If you saved yourself for<sup>7</sup> other emergencies, then the Roman people will say: "I have called you back to meet those emergencies for<sup>7</sup> which you saved yourself." 6. Zeno's opinion is that wise men alone are shapely even if they are most deformed. 7. When the envoys return,<sup>8</sup> if they bring peace, deem me eager for it, if war, a man of foresight.<sup>9</sup> 8. There is no doubt that the conservatives<sup>10</sup> would have conquered if Caesar had been their leader. 9. If you once cross<sup>8</sup> the limit of fairness in judicial procedure, be sure that you have left to others no limit of perverseness in forming their opinion. 10. If Caesar himself had had the power either<sup>11</sup> to conduct an investigation concerning the death of Caelius or<sup>11</sup> to summon him up himself from the dead,<sup>12</sup> which do you think he would have done? even if for friendship's sake he might have desired<sup>13</sup> to call him forth, on account of the state he would not have done it. You therefore sit as avengers of the death of a man whose life you would be unwilling to restore, even if you should think it could be restored by you.

<sup>1</sup> *retinere possessionem*. <sup>2</sup> 664, R. 1. <sup>3</sup> *levitas*; 'be blamed' = *culpa est*.

<sup>4</sup> *obstrictum esse*. <sup>5</sup> Use verb. <sup>6</sup> *recte*. <sup>7</sup> Either the Dat. or *ad*; but the latter is better for 'preserve' (*servare*); why? <sup>8</sup> Be careful of the tense.

<sup>9</sup> *providus*. <sup>10</sup> *bonus*. <sup>11</sup> What is the difference between *aut* and *vel*?

<sup>12</sup> *inferi*. <sup>13</sup> 258.

## 12. RELATIVE SENTENCES—I.

G. 610-626; A. & G. 197-201 (303-308); B. 250, 251, 311, 312; H. 396-399, 510, 589; H. & B. 281-284, 550, 566-569; L. 1792-1815; W. 580-585.

Relative Sentences are used much more frequently in Latin than in English and in a greater variety of combinations; hence they merit particular study. They take the place of Demonstratives in connecting clauses, and are combined in various ways with other relatives and with interrogatives. Notice especially the rules governing Concord, Incorporation, and Attraction. Do not overlook in this connection the strange Reversed Incorporation in Consecutive Clauses (616, N. 2). In simple Relative Sentences the rules governing Tenses (622, 623) and Moods (624-26) are the same that govern other independent sentences.



## A.

45. 1. The deeds of Hannibal, who is known to have defeated the Romans so often,<sup>1</sup> are admired by all of us. 2. The ancient Greeks called fate a blind ruler of gods and men and<sup>2</sup> thought that even Jupiter the father of gods and men was subject to his sway. 3. He betook himself to the Volscians, with whom<sup>3</sup> he had taken refuge before. 4. Tell me what<sup>4</sup> you think about the political situation.<sup>5</sup> 5. A benefit that is bestowed on anybody<sup>6</sup> is a favor to nobody. 6. Aratus of Sicyon thought—and this<sup>7</sup> showed<sup>8</sup> a wise man—that he ought to consult<sup>9</sup> the interests of all his fellow-citizens. 7. The poet Vergil wrote an epic poem which is called the Aeneid. 8. The Gauls once plundered Delphi, the famous oracle of Apollo, which was called by the ancients the centre<sup>10</sup> of the world. 9. Coriolanus fled to the Volscians, a people<sup>11</sup> that was at that time bitterly hostile to the name of Rome.<sup>12</sup> 10. The day I heard that tyrant called a renowned man I began to distrust. 11. I see that I am deserted by those who ought to have been the last<sup>13</sup> to do so. 12. We have carefully endeavored<sup>14</sup> to speak briefly and lucidly about the matters that<sup>15</sup> we still had to speak of. 13. You have only to ask: such is your influence, he will readily do what you wish. 14. Agamemnon sacrificed Iphigenia, since he had vowed to Diana the most beautiful being<sup>16</sup> born in his kingdom that year. 15. Caesar got-as-far-as<sup>17</sup> Corinth, which is the first town as you enter<sup>18</sup> the Isthmus from Attica, and whose inhabitants<sup>19</sup> had sent ambassadors. 16. Whichever way<sup>20</sup> we turn, we stumble against simpletons or scoundrels. 17. The senate held a consultation about receiving Cybele, for<sup>21</sup> a recent message had come that she was at Tarracina.

<sup>1</sup> Use *quoties* in an Indirect Question. <sup>2</sup> 610, R. 1. <sup>3</sup> 611, R. 1. <sup>4</sup> 611, R. 2. <sup>5</sup> = 'the state.' <sup>6</sup> *quilibet*. <sup>7</sup> 614, R. 2. <sup>8</sup> 366, R. 2. <sup>9</sup> Be careful of the constructions of *consulere*. <sup>10</sup> *umbilicus*. <sup>11</sup> 616, 2. <sup>12</sup> Use the adjective. <sup>13</sup> = 'by whom it was least proper'; *convenit*, 'it is proper.' <sup>14</sup> *operam dare*. <sup>15</sup> 616, 1. <sup>16</sup> 616, 3. <sup>17</sup> = 'reached.' <sup>18</sup> 353. <sup>19</sup> *gens*. <sup>20</sup> Omit. <sup>21</sup> 626.

## B.

46. 1. The boy while he is yet<sup>1</sup> tender must be steeped in those arts from the absorption of which<sup>2</sup> he will come better prepared<sup>3</sup> for greater things. 2. Defeated, the Carthaginians begged the Romans for peace; and as Regulus would<sup>4</sup> not grant it except under the harshest conditions they begged the Lacedaemonians for help. 3. To<sup>5</sup> tell you what I really<sup>6</sup> think, the state is in the hands of<sup>7</sup> desperadoes. 4. Everything<sup>8</sup> we say cannot be reduced to regular laws.<sup>9</sup> 5. Dionysius was brave and skilled in war and—which is not easily found in a tyrant—neither a debauchee nor avaricious. 6. The city of Cadiz was founded by a Tyrian fleet, which founded Utica also. 7. It had never occurred<sup>10</sup> to me to wish for you the wild frenzy<sup>11</sup> into which you have fallen. 8. Animals do not move from the place in which they are born. 9. Such is your shrewdness<sup>12</sup> that you will readily understand why I have not followed<sup>13</sup> your advice. 10. The mountain, which the exiles had taken possession of, was grassy and well-watered.<sup>14</sup> 11. At that time they began<sup>15</sup> at Athens to choose<sup>15</sup> the archons for ten years, a custom that remained seventy years. 12. The poet thought that the only task set before<sup>16</sup> him was that the plays he wrote should please the public. 13. Crassus did not live to see<sup>17</sup> marred in every respect that state in which, even in its greatest bloom,<sup>18</sup> he would have surpassed every one in glory. 14. That same year Cumae was captured by the Campanians, a city that the Greeks had possession of at that time. 15. No matter who it is that<sup>19</sup> reaches a high position,<sup>20</sup> he will become dizzy.<sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Omit. <sup>2</sup> = 'which if he absorbs'; be careful of the tense. <sup>3</sup> Notice the manifold translation of the Latin Comparative. <sup>4</sup> *nolle*. <sup>5</sup> 545, 3. R. 3. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. 4, Note 2. <sup>7</sup> 416, 17. <sup>8</sup> = 'whatever.' <sup>9</sup> *ars et praecepta*; Hendiadys. <sup>10</sup> *in mentem venire*. <sup>11</sup> Hendiadys = 'madness and insanity.' <sup>12</sup> 616, I, N. 2. <sup>13</sup> *uti*. <sup>14</sup> *aquosus*. <sup>15</sup> Use passive construction. <sup>16</sup> *negotium dare*; see 369. <sup>17</sup> 'To live to see' = 'to see.' <sup>18</sup> Use *florens*. <sup>19</sup> = 'whoever.' <sup>20</sup> *fastigium*. <sup>21</sup> *vertigine corripī*.

## C.

47. 1. Great is the admiration felt<sup>1</sup> for a man who speaks eloquently and wisely, for those who hear him think he is wiser than everybody else. 2. I did not suppose there were any human beings in whose eyes<sup>2</sup> my life was hateful. 3. They recounted what dangers threatened<sup>3</sup> their respective<sup>4</sup> cities by land and sea and begged the king for reinforcements. 4. Are you the man that has lost everything? 5. I have taken refuge with you, to whom I am compelled—the most wretched thing in my eyes<sup>5</sup>—to be a burden<sup>6</sup> rather than a blessing.<sup>6</sup> 6. Of the number of those<sup>7</sup> who were consuls during those years many are dead. 7. The Arabians have fleet horses and swift camels, which latter they call the ships of the desert. 8. Apollonius was wont to urge each man to that profession<sup>8</sup> for which he thought him fit. 9. In the year in which Tarquin the Overbearing was exiled from Rome, the Athenians exiled Hippias. 10. Verres sent to King Antiochus to<sup>9</sup> ask for the most beautiful vessels he had seen in his palace.<sup>10</sup> 11. Being<sup>11</sup> in the straits in which I have shown him to have been, he resolved to resign<sup>12</sup> his office. 12. May I die if I do not think that your glory is such<sup>13</sup> that you prefer to be consulted by Caesar rather than enriched by him. 13. Atticus sent to Cicero for<sup>14</sup> the most charming books he had. 14. All ancient nations once obeyed kings, a kind of government<sup>15</sup> that was at first offered<sup>16</sup> only to the wisest and justest men. 15. We never return to our parents what we receive from them, nor will our children return to us what they receive from us. 16. The wall was torn down, for it separated<sup>17</sup> the city from the citadel.

<sup>1</sup> Omit ; what is the proper construction after a substantive ? <sup>2</sup> 611, R. 1. <sup>3</sup> Do not personify. <sup>4</sup> 318, 3. <sup>5</sup> Dative. <sup>6</sup> 356, R. 2. <sup>7</sup> = 'of that number.' <sup>8</sup> *ars*. <sup>9</sup> 435. <sup>10</sup> 416, 4. <sup>11</sup> 585, R. <sup>12</sup> *se abdicare*. <sup>13</sup> 616, I, N. 2. <sup>14</sup> Use *petere*. <sup>15</sup> *genus imperii*. <sup>16</sup> *deferre*. <sup>17</sup> *dirimere*.



## D.

48. 1. Philosophy contains the doctrine<sup>1</sup> not only<sup>2</sup> of duty but also<sup>2</sup> that of<sup>3</sup> living well, so that he who teaches<sup>4</sup> it seems to undertake a very important rôle. 2. Let the punishment stop at those<sup>5</sup> with whom the fault originated. 3. The soldier slipped out through the pickets<sup>6</sup> and told the commander of the enemy the-facts-of-the-case.<sup>7</sup> 4. We are the men that have often loaded you with kindness. 5. The Lacedaemonians slew King Agis—a thing that had never happened among them before. 6. All Italy took up arms against the Romans, and whilst<sup>8</sup> their fortune was terrible their cause was just. 7. This great war that lasted so long, by which all nations were oppressed, Pompey brought to an end in one year. 8. He is not to be endured as an accuser who is himself caught<sup>9</sup> in the vice which he blames in another. 9. Marius, having accomplished the business that he had proposed to himself, returned to Cirta. 10. Philip subjugated the Aetolians, deserted as they were<sup>10</sup> by the Romans, the only help to which they trusted. 11. Let us see how potent the remedies are that are applied by philosophers to diseases of the mind.<sup>11</sup> 12. If you had allowed me, such is<sup>12</sup> my love for you that I should have settled the matter with the heirs. 13. This was the most glorious day of the many festive days that Scipio had seen in the course of his life. 14. Then I became quaestor, an office that I filled in the consulship of Tuditanus and Cethegus. 15. However<sup>13</sup> things turn out, remember to urge as an excuse<sup>14</sup> my ill-health. 16. The last battle of the war will never be effaced<sup>15</sup> from my mind, for I lost both my father and my uncle in it.

<sup>1</sup> *disciplina*. <sup>2</sup> *et—et*. <sup>3</sup> 308, R. 3. <sup>4</sup> *profiteri*. <sup>5</sup> 611, R. 1. <sup>6</sup> *intervalla stationum*. <sup>7</sup> = 'what had been done.' <sup>8</sup> 482, 4. <sup>9</sup> *deprehendere*. <sup>10</sup> 'As they were' is an English addition. <sup>11</sup> Plural. <sup>12</sup> 616, I, N. 2. <sup>13</sup> *utut*. <sup>14</sup> Study the construction of *excusare*. <sup>15</sup> *oblitterare in*.



### 13. RELATIVE SENTENCES—II.

G. 624-637; A. & G. 316-320 (531 (2), 535, 559, 580, 583 (*b*), 592, 593, 496); B. 312, 323, 324, 282 (2), 283, 284 (2 and 4); H. 589-593, 595 (4); H. & B. 502 (1 and 2), 507 (1), 508, 509, 515 (2), 517 (2), 519 (2), 521 (1), 522, 523, 539; L. 1816-1837; W. 586-589, 578.

To obtain the Moods in Relative Sentences it is necessary to resolve the Relative into a Demonstrative and a conjunction and choose the Mood accordingly. Thus Indefinite and Causal relatives have, as a rule, the Indicative (626, 628), while Final and Consecutive relatives take the Subjunctive (630, 631). The principle of Subordination in Oratio Obliqua governs 628 and 629. When the Cause is circumstantial we have the construction of *cum*, and also when an Adversative idea is felt (633, 634). The Characteristic Relative (631) needs careful attention and should not be used overmuch. Much neatness can be secured in construction of Relatives (636).

## A.

49. 1. The maiden was of such exceptional beauty that in whatever direction she walked<sup>1</sup> she attracted<sup>2</sup> everybody's eyes. 2. The army of Caesar seemed to us to have more daring than that of Pompey, inasmuch<sup>3</sup> as it had waged war on its country. 3. My competitors, so far as<sup>4</sup> they seem to be fixed, are Galba and Antonius. 4. Sulpicius was, above all others—that I have heard, I mean—a magnificent orator. 5. All men are persuaded<sup>5</sup> that God is the master and regulator of all things, and<sup>6</sup> that what happens happens according to his will. 6. This is what<sup>7</sup> I wonder at, that any man<sup>8</sup> should so wish to destroy another as to scuttle even the vessel in which he himself is sailing. 7. There is nothing that cannot be bought if you are willing to give as much as the seller wants. 8. The messengers who were to bring<sup>9</sup> the king the tidings that his son had fallen were taken into the royal palace to set forth to the king in person what<sup>10</sup> they had seen and heard concerning the death of his son. 9. The Roman race is one<sup>11</sup> that cannot<sup>12</sup> stay beaten. 10. An old man has not anything more to hope for even. 11. I am not ignorant that there are some<sup>13</sup> who have stated that Carthage was taken the year before. 12. Miserable old man!<sup>14</sup> not to have perceived in so long a life that death was to be despised. 13. The creditor turned the poor fellow out of house and home,<sup>15</sup> although he had not yet buried his father. 14. Cato, who could<sup>16</sup> have held Sicily without any trouble, and to whom<sup>17</sup> if he had held it all the conservatives would have flocked, set out from Syracuse day before yesterday.

<sup>1</sup> *incedere*; be careful of the tense. <sup>2</sup> *convertere*. <sup>3</sup> *quippe*. <sup>4</sup> 627. <sup>5</sup> *persuasum habere*. <sup>6</sup> 635. <sup>7</sup> 'Is what' makes the English smoother. <sup>8</sup> not *aliquis*; see 317. <sup>9</sup> This was their function; see 631. <sup>10</sup> 611, R. 2. <sup>11</sup> *is*. <sup>12</sup> = 'does not know (how) to.' <sup>13</sup> Undefined. <sup>14</sup> *qui* is necessary. <sup>15</sup> 'And home' fills out the English phrase. <sup>16</sup> Simple fact without characterization. <sup>17</sup> 636.

## B.

50. 1. Who is there that thinks that no matter how <sup>1</sup> a man is killed punishment must be inflicted, when he sees that under some circumstances <sup>2</sup> the sword to slay <sup>3</sup> the man is held out to us by the laws themselves? 2. His brother Lucius is leader of the gang, as <sup>4</sup> one who has done hard <sup>5</sup> fighting abroad. 3. Sestius was expected day before yesterday, but he has not come so far as I know. 4. All my sister's children that I have seen have grey eyes. 5. There would be no exportation of the things in which we abound, <sup>6</sup> nor importation of the things that we need, if merchants did not perform <sup>7</sup> these functions. <sup>8</sup> 6. In the case <sup>9</sup> of paintings, it happens that those who are unacquainted with the art relish <sup>10</sup> and praise things that are not to be praised. 7. "Since the colonies have rebelled," said King George, "let us send commissioners to rebuke, not to entreat them." 8. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to congratulate the senate and people of Rome and present <sup>11</sup> a golden wreath, which was to be deposited in the sanctuary of Jupiter. 9. Philistus, who imitated Thucydides, deserves to be <sup>12</sup> counted among the great historians. 10. I meet many people every day, for many are the gentlemen <sup>13</sup> who come here for the sake of their health. 11. The senators of Rome, thinking that they would never be free from machinations so long <sup>14</sup> as Hannibal was alive, sent ambassadors to Bithynia to demand of Prusias that he should put him to death. 12. The rascal! not to have awaited your convenience. 13. I wrote in reply that I was worse, <sup>15</sup> and that on that account <sup>16</sup> I wanted her to come to me at once.

<sup>1</sup> = 'in whatever (way).' <sup>2</sup> *aliquando*. <sup>3</sup> Gerundive. <sup>4</sup> *utpote*. <sup>5</sup> Express by a preposition in composition. <sup>6</sup> *abundare*. <sup>7</sup> *fungi*. <sup>8</sup> *munus*. <sup>9</sup> 418, I, b. <sup>10</sup> *delectari*. <sup>11</sup> = 'with a gift of.' <sup>12</sup> 631, I. <sup>13</sup> *optimus vir*. <sup>14</sup> 665. <sup>15</sup> *peius agere*. <sup>16</sup> *quare*.

## C.

51. 1. No matter what<sup>1</sup> you bid for Drusus' gardens, what one must have is always cheap.<sup>2</sup> 2. The Gauls in head-long<sup>3</sup> flight sought the camp, itself full of terror and tumult, inasmuch<sup>4</sup> as women and children were mingled together in it.<sup>4</sup> 3. None of the poets—so far as I have read them—has ever equalled the silliness of Maevius. 4. Aristides was so conspicuously free from<sup>5</sup> covetousness that he alone in the memory of men—so far indeed as we have heard—was called by the surname "Just." 5. Ambiorix exhorted the Nervii not to let this opportunity slip of taking vengeance<sup>6</sup> upon the Romans for the insults which they had received from the enemy. 6. I beg you not to spare expense<sup>7</sup> in anything so far as is necessary for your health. 7. Thus far I have found scarcely any one who did not think that what Caesar demanded ought to be granted rather than fight<sup>8</sup> the matter out. 8. There are people who forget favors<sup>9</sup> received because they are ashamed of having received them. 9. The Macedonians felled trees which were too large<sup>10</sup> for armed soldiers possibly<sup>11</sup> to carry. 10. Miltiades was a man of wonderful affability,<sup>12</sup> so that no one was so humble as not to have free access to him.<sup>13</sup> 11. You will find people who think-more-of<sup>14</sup> their own safety than of the state. 12. After the battle of Allia a great number of Romans fled to Veii, where they thought they were safer than at Rome. 13. Nero, although he was a man of unbounded debauchery, was indisposed<sup>15</sup> but three times, all-told,<sup>16</sup> in<sup>17</sup> fourteen years. 14. At the first watch Fabius gave a signal to those who were in the citadel and who had the harbor in charge.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use *quantusquantus*. <sup>2</sup> See 380, 2, R. <sup>3</sup> *effusus*. <sup>4</sup> *ut ubi*. <sup>5</sup> = 'excelled so in self-restraint (*abstinentia*).'<sup>6</sup> *ulcisci* means 'to take vengeance upon.'<sup>7</sup> *sumptus*. <sup>8</sup> *depugnare*; 644, R. 3. <sup>9</sup> *beneficium*. <sup>10</sup> 298. <sup>11</sup> Use verb. <sup>12</sup> 349, R. 3. <sup>13</sup> = 'to where a free approach (*aditus*) was not open.'<sup>14</sup> *pluris habere*. <sup>15</sup> *languescere*. <sup>16</sup> *omnino*. <sup>17</sup> 336, R. 2. <sup>18</sup> = 'the charge (*custodia*) of the harbor.'



## D.

52. 1. No matter how <sup>1</sup> the case stands, we shall certainly resist Cato. 2. You are all of less value than Albius and Atrius, for <sup>2</sup> you have subjected yourselves to them. 3. The consul marched in close order, <sup>3</sup> for he perceived that he had already reached the enemy. 4. All the provinces, so far indeed <sup>4</sup> as they belong <sup>5</sup> to the mainland, have been occupied by the enemy. 5. So far as appears <sup>6</sup> in literature, Pherecydes was the first to <sup>7</sup> say that the souls of men were immortal. 6. Quintilian's precept is excellent, namely, <sup>8</sup> that parents should do nothing <sup>9</sup> that is unbecoming nor <sup>10</sup> say anything that is shameful to <sup>11</sup> hear. 7. There is nothing more disgraceful than to carry on war with a man with whom you have lived on intimate terms. 8. He sent word to the dictator that he wanted another army to oppose <sup>12</sup> Hannibal with. 9. There is no one who has equalled Hannibal in hatred <sup>13</sup> of the Romans. 10. After almost the whole world was brought into a state of pacification, <sup>14</sup> the Roman empire was too great <sup>15</sup> for it to be possible <sup>16</sup> that it should be subjugated by a foreign power. 11. How few <sup>17</sup> are those who say that pleasure is not a blessing! 12. I know not what to answer except this one thing, that I am sorry for what I have done. <sup>18</sup> 13. Against the Tarentines, who live in Lower Italy, war was declared by the Romans for having maltreated <sup>19</sup> the ambassadors of the Romans. 14. Atticus, wanting the community set free, paid <sup>20</sup> the cash out of his own purse. <sup>21</sup> 15. Masinissa complained that Scipio had not attacked Syphax at once, when he knew to a certainty <sup>22</sup> that he would go over to the Carthaginians.

<sup>1</sup> Use *quisquis*. <sup>2</sup> *quidem*. <sup>3</sup> = 'with closed (*cogere*) line.' <sup>4</sup> *quidem*. <sup>5</sup> 366. <sup>6</sup> *exstare*. <sup>7</sup> 325, R. 7. <sup>8</sup> Omit; the Latin word *scilicet* over-translates the English. <sup>9</sup> 543, 4. <sup>10</sup> 444, 2. <sup>11</sup> 436. <sup>12</sup> Use passive. <sup>13</sup> = 'the hatred of Hannibal.' <sup>14</sup> *pacare*. <sup>15</sup> 298. <sup>16</sup> Use *posse*. <sup>17</sup> *quotus-quisque est*. <sup>18</sup> Participle. <sup>19</sup> *iniuria afficere*. <sup>20</sup> *numerare*. <sup>21</sup> *de suo*. <sup>22</sup> *certum habere*.

#### 14. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

G. 638-644; A. & G. 106, 234 (N. 2), 247, 250 (R.), (323 (*g*), 384 (N. 2), 406, 407, 414 (*a*),; B. 140, 223 (last ex.), 341 (I, *c*), 217, 284 (4); H. 189, 471, 499, 508 (5), 591 (6); H. & B. 144, 416, 417, 521 (2, *c*); L. 1889-1897, 1973; W. 586-589.

In Comparative Sentences the large number of Correlative forms is noteworthy, and their exact meanings are to be studied. Be careful not to misplace the relative part. Note particularly 641. *The more—the more* is apt to be confusing if attention is not paid to which is really the relative and which the correlative clause; and the coalescence of the members is interesting. The *ut* of 'limitation' is a dainty idiomatic use (642, R. 4). Clauses with *atque* should be compared with those with *quam* and the variety of usage noted (643, N. 4). In Sentences with *quam* the *proper case* is important (644, R. 1), and constructions with *potius* the *proper mood* (R. 3). Do not forget Disproportion (298) and Double Comparative (299), nor Adversative *ut—ita* (482, 4) and Asseverative *ita—ut* (262).

## A.

53. 1. I give myself up to Catullus, a poet of greater charm<sup>1</sup> than any<sup>2</sup> of his contemporaries. 2. Have you ever used a better ink than mine? 3. Agamemnon slew his daughter Iphigenia, than whom there was never a lovelier maiden in all Greece. 4. It is not so wretched not to obtain what you wish as to wish to obtain what you ought<sup>3</sup> not to have. 5. To Hannibal this event seemed to be too joyful to be all at once<sup>4</sup> appreciated.<sup>5</sup> 6. Hamilcar was a man of such mettle<sup>6</sup> that he preferred to perish rather than return home in such disgrace. 7. Each<sup>7</sup> man hopes to have<sup>7</sup> Metellus' fortune, as if hoping were more prudent than fearing. 8. Esteem other men as highly as you wish to be esteemed by them. 9. You have stained your character<sup>8</sup> with a great blot by charging<sup>9</sup> that innocent old man with crimes such as no one will ever believe him to have committed. 10. As I live, what my sister and I have told you is true. 11. Every learned man is proportionally<sup>10</sup> modest. 12. Numa was a man deeply learned<sup>11</sup> for that age in all divine and human law. 13. This battle, while less severe than the former one in the disasters<sup>12</sup> that followed it, in actual loss<sup>13</sup> to the army was even more disastrous. 14. I am afraid that what I am saying cannot be understood so well<sup>14</sup> when it is heard<sup>15</sup> as I understand it in my thoughts.<sup>15</sup> 15. They did not miss their leader in prosperity so much<sup>14</sup> as they felt their lack of him in adversity. 16. I am afraid that Phaedria has interpreted that in a different way from the way<sup>16</sup> I meant<sup>17</sup> it.

<sup>1</sup> Use *venustus*. <sup>2</sup> In a negative clause what pronoun? 317, 1. <sup>3</sup> Use *oportere*; for the mood, see 631. <sup>4</sup> *statim*. <sup>5</sup> *animo capere*. <sup>6</sup> *ferocia*; 349, R. 3. <sup>7</sup> *quisque*; see 318, 3. <sup>8</sup> = 'yourself.' <sup>9</sup> 513, N. 3; use *insimulare*. <sup>10</sup> 642, R. 2; 'proportionally' is involved in the comparison. <sup>11</sup> Remember that the translation of the Superlative is extremely various; use *consultus*. <sup>12</sup> Omit. <sup>13</sup> *strages*; what case does a substantive take after it? <sup>14</sup> Negative construction with *perinde*. <sup>15</sup> Use participles. <sup>16</sup> *aliovorsum accipere atque*. <sup>17</sup> *facere*.

## B.

54. 1. He said that the causes of events interested him more than the events themselves. 2. No castle is so lofty<sup>1</sup> that a donkey laden with gold cannot ascend to it.<sup>2</sup> 3. He advanced too incautiously for his time of life,<sup>3</sup> for he was by that time<sup>4</sup> sixty years old and ten years older than his colleague. 4. Velleius feared nothing so much as to seem to be hesitating about anything. 5. Chabrias indulged himself too liberally to be able to escape the hatred<sup>5</sup> of the mob. 6. He said that the sight of the place would rather arouse him to wipe out the memory of his former disgrace than<sup>6</sup> inspire him with fear. 7. Verginius slew the maiden with his own hand rather than that she should be given over to the lust of Claudius. 8. The cowardly urged that it would be better to<sup>7</sup> retire than be driven back. 9. How was Epicurus happier because he lived in his own country than Metrodorus because he lived at Athens? 10. Marcellus had settled it in his mind<sup>8</sup> that no one was so good a match<sup>9</sup> for Hannibal as himself. 11. Citizens are usually of the same character<sup>10</sup> as the leading men of the state. 12. We have an amount<sup>11</sup> of leisure that it has not been our good fortune<sup>12</sup> to have for a long time. 13. The Romans acted prudently as far as that was possible<sup>13</sup> in so rash an undertaking. 14. While<sup>14</sup> the misfortune of the other commanders lessened their authority, his dignity, on the other hand, increased daily in spite of reverse.<sup>15</sup> 15. Philosophy is so far from<sup>16</sup> being praised as it deserves that it is even neglected<sup>17</sup> by most and blamed<sup>17</sup> by many. 16. To those things which are born from the earth nature has given nothing beyond protecting them by nurture<sup>18</sup> and increase.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> = 'too lofty for'; see 298. <sup>2</sup> *in*. <sup>3</sup> *aetas*. <sup>4</sup> *iam*. <sup>5</sup> *invidia*. <sup>6</sup> 644, R. 3. <sup>7</sup> = 'they should rather.' <sup>8</sup> *in animum inducere*. <sup>9</sup> = 'so equal' (*par*). <sup>10</sup> *talis*. <sup>11</sup> *tantum*. <sup>12</sup> Translate by a verb of Happening; see Ex. 24, Note 12. <sup>13</sup> Express this phrase by a single word; 642, R. 4. <sup>14</sup> 482, 4. <sup>15</sup> Abl. Abs. <sup>16</sup> 552, R. 1. <sup>17</sup> 664, R. 1. <sup>18</sup> Gerund.



## C.

55. 1. I am desirous of hearing Stephanus, a higher authority<sup>1</sup> than Casaubon himself. 2. It was evident that the tumult was too<sup>2</sup> violent to be quieted. 3. I have read Charles' last novel, than which I can imagine<sup>3</sup> nothing more absurd. 4. As a rule<sup>4</sup> it does not occur to me why a thing is true so readily as why it is false. 5. The joy was too great for men to perceive its full meaning.<sup>5</sup> 6. He is a good man who is determined to endure every torture rather than<sup>6</sup> be recreant to his duty or his honor. 7. Dolabella left Asia too quickly for a garrison possibly<sup>7</sup> to be transported thither. 8. I do not think there was any one who reported<sup>8</sup> less than he had actually plowed, when so many penalties were set before<sup>9</sup> him. 9. Who ever heard who your father was before he heard whose son-in-law he was? 10. As you sow,<sup>10</sup> so shall you reap. 11. After Hannibal had fled from home he called his brother Mago to him, and when the Punics heard of this, they visited<sup>11</sup> Mago with the same punishment as<sup>12</sup> his brother. 12. The better a man is, the harder it is for him<sup>13</sup> to suspect that others are knaves. 13. It is better that such evils should not happen; still,<sup>14</sup> as they<sup>15</sup> did happen, they afforded great material for oratory. 14. Our youth are careless and are not occupied so much as they should be with the desire for glory. 15. I saw that he had not been moved in the same way<sup>16</sup> as I had been. 16. And crying out that he would die rather than break<sup>17</sup> his word, he was about to plunge the sword into his breast when the bystanders seized<sup>18</sup> his arm and<sup>18</sup> forcibly<sup>19</sup> restrained him. 17. The land of our adoption<sup>20</sup> is nearly<sup>21</sup> as dear to us as the land of our birth.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *locuples auctor*. <sup>2</sup> 298. <sup>3</sup> *sibi substituere*, 'to imagine.' <sup>4</sup> Use *solere*. <sup>5</sup> = 'take it all in' (*accipere*). <sup>6</sup> 644, R. 3. <sup>7</sup> Use verb. <sup>8</sup> *profiteri*. <sup>9</sup> *proponere*. <sup>10</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>11</sup> *afficere*. <sup>12</sup> 642, I. <sup>13</sup> = 'with the more difficulty does he.' <sup>14</sup> 482, 4. <sup>15</sup> *cum*. <sup>16</sup> *similiter*. <sup>17</sup> *fidem exuere*. <sup>18</sup> 664, R. 1. <sup>19</sup> *vi*. <sup>20</sup> = 'which adopted (*excipere*) us,' 'which bore us'; 624, R. <sup>21</sup> = 'is not very differently dear.'

## D.

56. 1. The causes of events interest me more than the events themselves. 2. There was no desertion, because they had already committed crimes too<sup>1</sup> great possibly<sup>2</sup> to be forgiven. 3. Not less than<sup>3</sup> twenty thousand men were taken prisoners. 4. He was not less than forty years old when<sup>4</sup> he married. 5. What is a greater sin against humanity<sup>5</sup> than to divert that eloquence which<sup>6</sup> has been given by nature for the protection and preservation of men to the overthrow and destruction of the good? 6. To Philip, who was not accustomed to hear the truth, this language seemed bolder than one ought to hold<sup>7</sup> in the presence of the king. 7. Zeno endured everything rather<sup>8</sup> than betray those who were implicated<sup>9</sup> in the overthrow of the tyranny. 8. They affirm that the wise man will assume no part in the government beyond what<sup>10</sup> the necessities of the occasion<sup>11</sup> require. 9. It is better to do some one thing capitally than to do a good many things moderately well.<sup>12</sup> 10. They say that Plato had the same view<sup>13</sup> of the eternal existence of the soul as Pythagoras. 11. Hannibal had not supposed that so many nations of Italy would revolt as did revolt after the battle of Cannae. 12. The more a man is furnished<sup>14</sup> with virtues, the more is he to be revered. 13. If you will write to me how you are, it will be the greatest possible favor<sup>15</sup> to me. 14. There were some who believed that while<sup>16</sup> Capito was disgraced and stained by avarice and passion, still he had refrained from any thought of revolution. 15. When a state is blotted out it is in a way—to compare small things with great—just<sup>17</sup> as if this whole world were falling into ruins.<sup>18</sup> 16. Those who had served in those regions recalled the river as well<sup>19</sup> as the disaster that occurred there.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 298. <sup>2</sup> Use verb. <sup>3</sup> 296, R. 4. <sup>4</sup> Omit, using Participial construction. <sup>5</sup> = 'more inhuman.' <sup>6</sup> 637. <sup>7</sup> Use Passive of *habere*. <sup>8</sup> 644, R. 3. <sup>9</sup> *consciūs*; follow by a Gerundive construction. <sup>10</sup> *extra quam sī*. <sup>11</sup> = 'time and necessity'; 698. <sup>12</sup> *mediocriter*. <sup>13</sup> *idem sentire*. <sup>14</sup> *ornatus*. <sup>15</sup> *gratum*; 303. <sup>16</sup> 482, 4. <sup>17</sup> *simile est*. <sup>18</sup> *interire*. <sup>19</sup> *iuxta atque*. <sup>20</sup> Omit.

## 15. PARTICIPIAL AND MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES (*to, without*).

G. 664-670; A. & G. 289-294 (488-499); B. 337; H. 636-640; H. & B. 599-608; L. 2278-2299; W. 645-652.

Participial Sentences serve two purposes: compactness and continuity. Hence they need careful study, and the proper handling is a mark of correct feeling for the language. Notice the variety of the translation into a subordinate clause or an abstract substantive, and the variety of conception: Time, Cause, Concession, Condition, etc. Temporal relations must be looked to; particularly because the Participles are defective. Hence the wide use of Deponents. In the case of the Future Participle watch the periods of the language. Do not forget 437, 438.

*To* is a very varied word in English: it is the sign of the substantival Infinitive, the mark of the Dative Case; it is used after various words to introduce relations of Design, and with many expressions it is merely coincident. It is, besides, used in many phrases. So in translation into Latin it is necessary to see the exact meaning, and translate that meaning into Latin.

'Without' may be translated by the preposition *sine*, by a negative clause or by an ablative absolute; then *ut non* (*ne*) may be employed, and after a negative sentence *quin*. *Nisi* is often a favorite translation: see 552, R. 4; 556; 591, *b*; 593, 3.



## A.

57. 1. While Cinna was lording it in Italy the greater part of the nobility fled to Sulla in<sup>1</sup> Achaia. 2. I never drink unless I am thirsty ; many men drink without<sup>2</sup> being thirsty. 3. The Greeks of Europe surrounded with cities the sea-coast of Asia, which they had taken in war. 4. It was announced to Cincinnatus as he was plowing that he had been made dictator. 5. It is the peculiar mark<sup>3</sup> of a well-constituted mind<sup>4</sup> to rejoice in prosperity, and to grieve over the opposite.<sup>5</sup> 6. I was hired to cook and not to be beaten. 7. There is nothing to<sup>6</sup> prevent your friends from coming to your aid, unless perhaps they are afraid of an ambush. 8. What you are doing so<sup>7</sup> inconsiderately is merely<sup>7</sup> to<sup>8</sup> betray the Roman people and give the victory to Hannibal. 9. We cannot let him go without giving him a reward.<sup>9</sup> 10. Terentius Varro, without waiting for his colleague's aid, joined battle. 11. Charles lived many years with his mother and sister, without ever having had a difficulty<sup>10</sup> with them. 12. Sulla withdrew his forces without firing<sup>11</sup> the tower. 13. A vast swarm of locusts filled all the country around Capua, without its appearing<sup>12</sup> whence they came. 14. Amyntas informed the soldiers that the commandant<sup>13</sup> of Egypt had fallen in battle, that the Persian garrison was both without a leader and weak, that the Egyptians, always hostile to their<sup>14</sup> commandants, would regard them as allies. 15. Inflamed with anger and thoroughly frightened by the danger, King Porsena threatened<sup>15</sup> Mucius Scaevola with<sup>15</sup> fire and death if he did not speedily disclose all the conspiracy. 16. I am afraid that owing to my interest<sup>16</sup> in the subject I have been too prolix.

<sup>1</sup> Remember 337, R. 6. <sup>2</sup> *neque* or *etsi*. <sup>3</sup> *proprium*. <sup>4</sup> English often confuses 'mind' and 'spirit.' <sup>5</sup> *contrarius*. <sup>6</sup> 631, 2. <sup>7</sup> Omit. <sup>8</sup> 428, R. 2. <sup>9</sup> Abl. Abs. with *nisi*; see Ex. 22, Note 3. <sup>10</sup> *simultas*. <sup>11</sup> *succendere*. <sup>12</sup> *constare*. <sup>13</sup> *praetor*. <sup>14</sup> *suus* or *is*? <sup>15</sup> *minari alicui aliquid*; 346. <sup>16</sup> = 'carried away (*efferre*) by my zeal.'



## B.

58. 1. After the consul had got possession of great booty he returned to camp. 2. Democritus threw away <sup>1</sup> his wealth because he thought it a burden to <sup>2</sup> a good mind. 3. Although Paullus dissuaded from it, <sup>3</sup> Varro attacked the Carthaginians. 4. After taking Thermopylae, Xerxes immediately set out for Athens, and, <sup>4</sup> as no one defended it, <sup>4</sup> he destroyed it <sup>4</sup> by fire, after killing the priests found in the Acropolis. <sup>5</sup> 5. Duilius was the first to <sup>6</sup> conquer the Punics on the sea. 6. I am going to take up my lodgings <sup>7</sup> at my uncle's. 7. The Carthaginian senators said that Hannibal had not crossed the Alps to wage war on the Tarentines. 8. There is no one—to my knowledge <sup>8</sup>—that would have received you more cordially. 9. During the war with Pompey <sup>9</sup> nothing happened without my foretelling it. 10. Can you condemn Cornelius without condemning also the act of Marius? 11. Show yourself worthy of being believed <sup>10</sup> without swearing. 12. That you should have written so many letters to Corinth without <sup>11</sup> writing any to me! 13. The general thought that he would not be a match for such a mass of the enemy without sending for auxiliary troops. 14. The consul made a speech in which he said <sup>12</sup> that people were mistaken if they thought that the senate had still any considerable power <sup>13</sup> in the state; that as for <sup>14</sup> the Roman knights, they should pay <sup>15</sup> for the day on which they met armed on the Capitoline hill, and <sup>16</sup> that the time had come for those who had been in fear—he meant forsooth the conspirators—to avenge themselves. 15. Cicero said that if Caesar did not execute anybody and did not take away anything from anybody he would be liked most by those who feared him most.

<sup>1</sup> *proicere*. <sup>2</sup> Genitive. <sup>3</sup> 'From it' is implied. <sup>4</sup> 610, R. 1. <sup>5</sup> *arx*. <sup>6</sup> 325, R. 6. <sup>7</sup> *habitare*. <sup>8</sup> 627, R. 1. <sup>9</sup> *Pompeianus*. <sup>10</sup> *fidem habere*, 'to believe.' <sup>11</sup> *cum*. <sup>12</sup> This is involved in the word 'speech.' <sup>13</sup> *posse*. <sup>14</sup> Use *vero*; 487. <sup>15</sup> *poenas dare*. <sup>16</sup> Omit.

## C.

59. 1. As the consul was hastening to Rome, the enemy overtook his army. 2. Lucius Scipio received the surname of Asiaticus, because he had conquered Asia after the example of his brother, who was called Africanus for <sup>1</sup> having subjugated <sup>2</sup> Africa. 3. The Stoics change the words without changing the things. 4. No one observes the moon except <sup>3</sup> when it is in eclipse.<sup>4</sup> 5. Romulus marched out with all his forces and commanded a part of his soldiers to lie in ambush.<sup>5</sup> 6. You will do me a very great favor<sup>6</sup> to send me the third volume of Tennyson's poems. 7. To think that you should have envied a man who had loaded you with benefits! 8. The Greek language lends itself more readily<sup>7</sup> to the composition<sup>8</sup> of words. 9. Is it true liberality to give money without depriving one's self of any comfort? 10. The precepts of art are of little avail to form an orator without the assistance<sup>9</sup> of nature. 11. He departed without accomplishing his mission.<sup>10</sup> 12. Who ever saw a man presented with a wreath without a city having been taken, or a camp of the enemy fired? 13. Fulvius received<sup>11</sup> the letter, and<sup>11</sup> without opening it, laid it down. 14. Mago was afraid that the Ligurians themselves, perceiving that the Punics were evacuating<sup>12</sup> Italy, would go over to those in whose power they soon would be. 15. Compelled by necessity, they cried out that he might lead them whithersoever he thought good. 16. I told him that I could not take the young man to my heart,<sup>13</sup> unless I was absolutely<sup>14</sup> certain that he was a friend to the conservatives. 17. I think that if Philip of Macedon had not been instructed<sup>15</sup> in the military science of the Greeks he would not have defeated the Greeks at Chaeronea.

<sup>1</sup> 666. <sup>2</sup> *domare*. <sup>3</sup> 591, 2, R. 2. <sup>4</sup> *laborare*. <sup>5</sup> *subsidiere in insidiis*.  
<sup>6</sup> *pergratum*. <sup>7</sup> *facilem esse*. <sup>8</sup> Use *duplicare*. <sup>9</sup> 664, R. 2. <sup>10</sup> *res*.  
<sup>11</sup> 664, R. 1. <sup>12</sup> *relinquere* in passive construction. <sup>13</sup> *complexi*. <sup>14</sup> *exploratum esse*. <sup>15</sup> 339, N. 4.

## D.

60. 1. When we behold the heavens<sup>1</sup> we are certain that the world is the work of God. 2. After Tarquin had been exiled from Rome, Brutus was chosen consul. 3. What general is so crazy as to think that victory will perch<sup>2</sup> on his<sup>3</sup> lap without his doing anything? 4. Lucretius triumphed over<sup>4</sup> the Aequians and Volscians whom he had conquered, and as he was triumphing his legions followed him. 5. It is not right<sup>5</sup> for you to do that. 6. If there had been any one<sup>6</sup> to dissuade<sup>7</sup> me from so dastardly a course,<sup>8</sup> I should either have fallen honorably, or should be living as a conqueror to-day. 7. You have done well to<sup>9</sup> hide your life from the foolish rabble. 8. It is hard to tell who was responsible<sup>10</sup> for the plan of overthrowing the state. 9. Nature has given us life as a loan<sup>11</sup> without fixing a day for repayment.<sup>12</sup> 10. That certainly would never have occurred to me without being reminded of it. 11. Gorgias lived full 107 years without relaxing<sup>13</sup> in his enthusiasm<sup>14</sup> for literature. 12. Can one of the two armies be sent to Rome without raising the siege of Capua? 13. He was three miles off without<sup>15</sup> any of the enemy having perceived it. 14. The Roman general said that Hannibal had not attacked his camp because he was lying-torpid owing to an error which would not last<sup>16</sup> long. 15. Vibius said that those who talked about peace and surrender did not remember what they would have done if they had had the Romans in their power. 16. The Punics tried to take the Roman general alive, but he attacked them so fiercely that he could not have been spared<sup>17</sup> unless they had been willing to lose many more of their men.

<sup>1</sup> Singular. <sup>2</sup> = 'fly down (*devolare*) into his bosom.' <sup>3</sup> 350, I. <sup>4</sup> *de.* <sup>5</sup> *fas*. <sup>6</sup> 317, I. <sup>7</sup> *revocare*. <sup>8</sup> *consilium*. <sup>9</sup> 525. <sup>10</sup> *auctorem esse*; 'the plan' may be omitted. <sup>11</sup> *mutuum dare*. <sup>12</sup> Omit 'for repayment' and use *dicere*. <sup>13</sup> *cessare*. <sup>14</sup> *studium*; 360, I, R. 1. <sup>15</sup> *cum*. <sup>16</sup> *diuturnum esse*. <sup>17</sup> 217.





**SECOND PART**  
**CONTINUOUS EXERCISES**



## 1 A.

## A STRATAGEM OF CYRUS.

61. After<sup>1</sup> subjugating Asia and bringing<sup>2</sup> all the East into his power, Cyrus made war on the Scythians. At that time Tomyris was queen of the Scythians, but<sup>3</sup> not frightened, as might have been expected of a woman,<sup>4</sup> by the approach of the enemy, instead<sup>5</sup> of keeping them from crossing the Araxes, as she might<sup>5</sup> have done, she permitted them to cross, thinking that the conflict would be easier for her within the limits of her own kingdom and that flight would be more difficult for the enemy with the river in their rear.<sup>6</sup> And<sup>7</sup> so Cyrus put his forces across, and after advancing some distance into Scythia pitched his camp. Then on the next day he deserted his camp under a pretence<sup>8</sup> of fright and left there among other things<sup>9</sup> a large store<sup>10</sup> of wine. When this<sup>11</sup> was announced to the queen she sent her son, a youth, to follow him up with a third part of her forces. Arrived at the camp of Cyrus the inexperienced lad,<sup>12</sup> as if he had come to a feast not to a fray, gave no further thought to<sup>13</sup> the enemy, and suffered the barbarians to make themselves heavy with<sup>14</sup> the wine, to which they were unaccustomed. Cyrus found<sup>15</sup> it out, returned<sup>15</sup> during the night, surprised<sup>15</sup> them while they were overcome,<sup>16</sup> and slew them all, together with the son of the queen.

<sup>1</sup> Abl. Abs.; 665. <sup>2</sup> *redigere*. <sup>3</sup> Relative. Latin uses the relative construction much more frequently than the English, and expresses by it various constructions. <sup>4</sup> *muliebritur*; but see 642, R. 4, for a different translation. <sup>5</sup> = 'whereas (*cum*) she might.' <sup>6</sup> = 'by reason of the interposition (*obiectus*) of the river.' <sup>7</sup> Turn this sentence into a period of this type: Participial Clause, Subordinate (here *cum*) Clause, Principal Verb. <sup>8</sup> Latin objects to abstract substantives; so use *simulare*. <sup>9</sup> *et alia et.* <sup>10</sup> *copia*. <sup>11</sup> Relative; 610. <sup>12</sup> = 'lad, ignorant of military science.' <sup>13</sup> *omittere*; do not make a principal verb of this. <sup>14</sup> *se onerare*. <sup>15</sup> One period; see note 7. <sup>16</sup> *saucius*.

## 1 B.

## THE BATTLE OF MARATHON.

62. Darius after making an unsuccessful<sup>1</sup> war on the Scythians with a loss<sup>2</sup> of 80,000 men subdued Asia and Macedonia, and<sup>3</sup> defeated the Ionians also in a naval battle. Then learning<sup>4</sup> that the Athenians had furnished help to the Ionians against him, he directed<sup>5</sup> the full tide<sup>6</sup> of war upon them. Hearing<sup>4</sup> of his advance the Athenians asked aid of the Lacedaemonians, at that time an allied state. But when they saw that they were detained by a religious observance,<sup>7</sup> without waiting<sup>8</sup> for reinforcements they drew up 10,000 of their own citizens and 1,000 auxiliaries from Plataea and marched forth to<sup>9</sup> battle against 600,000 of the enemy on the plains of Marathon. Miltiades was both the leader in the war and the man who influenced<sup>10</sup> them not to wait for aid; so confident had he become<sup>11</sup> that there was more help in speed than in allies. So they went into the fight with high spirits,<sup>12</sup> so high indeed<sup>13</sup> that, though there was a mile between the two lines of battle, the Athenians started at a double-quick<sup>14</sup> and reached<sup>15</sup> the enemy before they discharged<sup>16</sup> their arrows. And the result matched<sup>17</sup> the boldness of Miltiades, for they fought with such valor that you would have thought that on the one side were men, on the other sheep.

<sup>1</sup> Use *nequiquam*. <sup>2</sup> Abl. Abs.; 664, R. 2. <sup>3</sup> The addition of 'also' makes *et* not so good as *atque*. <sup>4</sup> The lack of a Perf. Partic. active makes necessary the use of a subordinate clause, or of an Abl. Abs.; see 410, N. 4. <sup>5</sup> *convertere*. <sup>6</sup> *impetus*. <sup>7</sup> *religio*. <sup>8</sup> 'Without' has to be variously translated in Latin; see page 73. <sup>9</sup> *in*. <sup>10</sup> Use *auctor*. <sup>11</sup> = 'so great confidence had taken possession (*capere*) of him, that he thought.' <sup>12</sup> *animorum alacritas*. <sup>13</sup> *adeo*. <sup>14</sup> *citato cursu*. <sup>15</sup> See 513. <sup>16</sup> Use *iactus*. <sup>17</sup> = 'nor did the result fail,' etc.



## 1 C.

## BATTLE OF THERMOPYLAE.

63. After<sup>1</sup> dismissing his allies Leonidas exhorted the Spartans, saying<sup>2</sup> that they should remember that they must fall in any case; but they should not wait to be<sup>3</sup> surrounded by the enemy, but while night gave the opportunity should come upon them unawares<sup>4</sup>; nowhere would they fall<sup>5</sup> more honorably than as victors in the camp of the enemy. There was nothing to which it was difficult to persuade men already persuaded to die.<sup>6</sup> At once they seized their arms, and 600 as they were,<sup>7</sup> they broke into the camp of 500,000 and at once struck for<sup>8</sup> the headquarters of the king, either to make him share their death,<sup>9</sup> or if they themselves were cut down first, to perish, if possible,<sup>10</sup> in the lair<sup>11</sup> of their great foe. Wild confusion spread<sup>12</sup> through the whole camp. The Spartans, failing to find<sup>13</sup> the king, roamed victorious through all the camp, cut down and levelled everything like men who knew that they were fighting not with the hope of victory but to avenge<sup>14</sup> their fall. The battle was prolonged from nightfall to a late hour<sup>15</sup> in the day. At last, not conquered but worn out with conquering, they fell amid vast hordes of fallen foes. No wonder that Xerxes after<sup>16</sup> such a blow on land determined to try his fortune by sea.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Abl. Abs. <sup>2</sup> The verb of Saying is often involved in the Oratio Obligua; 649, N. 2. <sup>3</sup> Note the various constructions with *expectare*; 572, R. 2. <sup>4</sup> *securus*. <sup>5</sup> *perire*. <sup>6</sup> 423, 2, N. 2. <sup>7</sup> 'As they were' is an English addition to emphasize the smallness of their numbers; the Roman gains the same effect by juxtaposition. <sup>8</sup> *petere*. <sup>9</sup> = 'to die with him.' <sup>10</sup> *potissimum*. <sup>11</sup> *sedes*. <sup>12</sup> *oriri*. <sup>13</sup> = 'after they do not find.' <sup>14</sup> Use a substantive, parallel with *spes*. <sup>15</sup> *maior pars*. <sup>16</sup> Use *accipere*. <sup>17</sup> = 'try the fortune of the sea.'

## 1 D.

## THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS.

64. All the fleet of the allies had been united and all intent on a naval war, and the straits of the Bay of Salamis had been occupied to prevent<sup>2</sup> the possibility<sup>3</sup> of being surrounded<sup>2</sup> by greater numbers, when<sup>1</sup> a dissension arose among the leaders of the several<sup>4</sup> states, who wished to withdraw from the war and slip away to protect their own homes. But<sup>5</sup> Themistocles, fearing lest by the departure of the allies the strength of the fleet might be diminished, announced to Xerxes by the agency of<sup>6</sup> a faithful slave that all Greece was herded<sup>7</sup> up in that one place, and that he could very readily capture it; but if the different states, which were already desirous to depart, should be scattered he would have to hunt<sup>8</sup> them down, one by one, with greater labor. By this stratagem he impelled the king to give the signal for battle. In the meantime the king, as if he were a mere spectator of the fight, remained on the shore with a part of his navy, while<sup>9</sup> Artemisia, queen of Halicarnassus, who had come to the assistance of Xerxes, was fighting<sup>10</sup> valiantly, so that you might have seen in the man a woman's<sup>11</sup> cowardice,<sup>12</sup> in the woman a man's<sup>11</sup> bravery. When the battle was trembling in the balance<sup>13</sup> the Ionians, following the instructions of Themistocles, began by degrees to withdraw from the fight, and their defection dampened<sup>14</sup> the ardor<sup>15</sup> of the rest.

<sup>1</sup> Observe which part of the sentence is logically subordinate, and use the particle accordingly. <sup>2</sup> Negative Design involves a positive intention to prevent. <sup>3</sup> Use *posse*. <sup>4</sup> Need not be expressed in the Latin. <sup>5</sup> Notice that the opposition in thought is between the actions of Themistocles and those of the other leaders—change the sentence accordingly. <sup>6</sup> See 401. <sup>7</sup> *contrahere*. <sup>8</sup> *consectari*. <sup>9</sup> *autem*. <sup>10</sup> *rem gerere*. <sup>11</sup> Use adjectives. <sup>12</sup> *timor*. <sup>13</sup> *anceps*. <sup>14</sup> *frangere*. <sup>15</sup> That is, 'spirits.'

## 2 A.

## XERXES CLAIMS HIS FATHER'S THRONE.

65. In the meantime Darius, as he was about to renew the war, died in the very act of making preparations,<sup>1</sup> leaving many sons who had been born<sup>2</sup> to him both during his reign and before it. Of these Ariaemenes the eldest claimed<sup>3</sup> the throne by the privilege of seniority,<sup>4</sup> a right which<sup>5</sup> both the order of birth<sup>6</sup> and nature itself gave. But Xerxes started a claim<sup>7</sup> based not on<sup>7</sup> the order but on the happy conjuncture<sup>8</sup> of birth. Ariaemenes, he said,<sup>9</sup> was, it was true, the first born to Darius, but he was born to Darius while a private individual, whereas<sup>10</sup> he was the first born to the king. And so his brothers, who had been begotten before, could claim the private patrimony which Darius had had at that time, but not the throne. It was he who was the first that<sup>11</sup> his father had acknowledged<sup>12</sup> in his reign. Besides<sup>13</sup> this, he was born of a mother who was a queen; moreover, he had had as his maternal grandfather Cyrus, a king, and not merely the heir but the founder of that vast<sup>14</sup> empire. And granting<sup>15</sup> that the father had left both brothers with the same<sup>16</sup> right, yet he, by his mother's right and his grandfather's, had the better claim.<sup>17</sup> This controversy, by common consent,<sup>18</sup> they referred to their uncle Artaphernes, who, having examined the matter, gave judgment in favor<sup>19</sup> of Xerxes.

<sup>1</sup> Use *apparatus*. <sup>2</sup> *suscipere*. <sup>3</sup> *vindicare*. <sup>4</sup> That is, 'age.' <sup>5</sup> 616, 2.  
<sup>6</sup> Use verb. <sup>7</sup> *litem excitare de*. <sup>8</sup> *felicitas*. <sup>9</sup> Omit; it is quite common to introduce a clause in O. O. by *nam*, when an explanation is given of a preceding statement. <sup>10</sup> Opposition need not always be indicated by a particle. <sup>11</sup> 325, R. 6. <sup>12</sup> *suscipere*. <sup>13</sup> Use *accedere*. <sup>14</sup> Vastness and vagueness are often akin; hence the Roman used *tantus* in such a sense; do not use *imperium* for 'empire.' <sup>15</sup> 604, R. 1. <sup>16</sup> That is, 'equal,' *aequus*. <sup>17</sup> *vincere* is sufficient for the Roman. <sup>18</sup> *concordi animo*.  
<sup>19</sup> *praeponere*.

## 2 B.

## THE ALLIANCE OF THE PERSIANS AND THE LACEDAEMONIANS.

66. While the Athenians were carrying on war in Sicily with more eagerness than success,<sup>1</sup> Alcibiades, the originator<sup>2</sup> and leader of the war, was in his absence accused at Athens of having divulged the Eleusinian mysteries.<sup>3</sup> Recalled from the war to stand his trial,<sup>4</sup> whether from consciousness of guilt or because he could<sup>5</sup> not bear the outrage of the charge, without saying a word he went into exile to Elis. From this point, as soon as he learned that he was not only condemned but solemnly cursed<sup>6</sup> by all the priests with religious ceremonies,<sup>7</sup> he betook himself to Lacedaemon and there incited the Lacedaemonian king to wage war without provocation<sup>8</sup> against the Athenians, who had been thrown into confusion by their defeat in Sicily. Hereupon<sup>9</sup> Darius, the king of the Persians, remembering<sup>10</sup> his father's<sup>11</sup> hatred to that state, made an alliance with the Lacedaemonians by the agency of Tissaphernes and<sup>12</sup> promised to defray<sup>13</sup> all the expenses of the war. This was his ostensible motive<sup>14</sup> for combining<sup>16</sup> with the Lacedaemonians; in reality, however, he was afraid that the Lacedaemonians, if they defeated the Athenians, might turn<sup>15</sup> their arms against him. Who then can wonder that the power of the Athenians was destroyed when the forces of all the East combined<sup>16</sup> to overwhelm one city?

<sup>1</sup> Use adverbs and see 299, N. 1. <sup>2</sup> *concitor*. <sup>3</sup> = 'the mysteries of the initiatory rites (*initia*) of Ceres.' <sup>4</sup> = 'to his trial.' <sup>5</sup> Make the two reasons parallel in construction. <sup>6</sup> *devovere*, 'to curse solemnly.' <sup>7</sup> = 'by the religious ceremony (*religio*) of,' etc. <sup>8</sup> *ultro*. <sup>9</sup> *quo facto*. <sup>10</sup> *memor*. <sup>11</sup> Use adjective. <sup>12</sup> Use only one principal clause. <sup>13</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>14</sup> *titulus*. <sup>15</sup> *transferre*. <sup>16</sup> Use different verbs.



## 2 C.

## ON THE CHARACTER OF EPAMINONDAS.

67. A few days afterwards Epaminondas died, with whom fell also the strength<sup>1</sup> of the Theban state. For just as, if you break<sup>2</sup> off the sharp end<sup>3</sup> of a weapon you take away from the rest of the steel<sup>4</sup> the power of doing injury, so when the famous leader of the Thebans, the point of the weapon, as it were, was removed, the strength<sup>1</sup> of the state was dulled, so that they seemed not so much to have lost him as to have perished with him utterly.<sup>5</sup> For they never carried on any memorable war before he became<sup>6</sup> their leader, nor did they distinguish<sup>7</sup> themselves after his time by deeds<sup>8</sup> of valor but by disasters only, so that it is manifest that the glory of his country was both born and buried<sup>9</sup> with him. Moreover it was uncertain whether he was a better man or general. For he always sought command not for himself but for his country, and he was so careless of acquiring money<sup>10</sup> that there was no means for defraying his funeral expenses.<sup>11</sup> He was also as little covetous of glory as of money, for all the offices of command<sup>12</sup> were thrust upon him in spite of his refusal,<sup>13</sup> and he wore<sup>14</sup> his honors so that he seemed not to receive distinction from his position,<sup>15</sup> but to confer it upon the position<sup>15</sup> itself.

<sup>1</sup> *vires*; study the difference in meaning between the Singular and Plural of this word. <sup>2</sup> Be careful of your tense; see 244, R. 4. <sup>3</sup> *prima acies*. <sup>4</sup> To the Roman, *iron*. <sup>5</sup> = 'all of them.' <sup>6</sup> Do not use a subordinate clause. <sup>7</sup> *insignes esse*. <sup>8</sup> 204, N. 5. <sup>9</sup> *extingui*. <sup>10</sup> = 'so sparing (*parcus*) of money.' <sup>11</sup> = 'means of defraying expenses (all one word, *sumptus*) were lacking for,' etc. <sup>12</sup> = 'commands.' <sup>13</sup> 667. <sup>14</sup> *gerere*. <sup>15</sup> *dignitas*; omit one 'position.'

## 2 D.

## ON THE MURDER OF THE FALSE SMERDIS.

68. After<sup>1</sup> the death of Cambyzes, before<sup>1</sup> the report of the king's demise had been received, one of the Magi killed Smerdis, the brother of the king, and<sup>2</sup> substituted his own brother, who resembled Smerdis closely in face and figure; only<sup>3</sup> the false Smerdis<sup>4</sup> had lost his ears. Then the noble<sup>5</sup> Ostanes being informed by his daughter, one of the royal concubines, that the new king had no ears, communicated the fact<sup>6</sup> to the leading nobles of Persia, and after instigating<sup>7</sup> them to murder the impostor<sup>8</sup> bound them by a solemn<sup>9</sup> oath. There were only seven privy to this conspiracy, who, fearing<sup>10</sup> that if space were left for a change of mind<sup>11</sup> the plan might be revealed by some one, forthwith hid weapons under their garments and<sup>2</sup> proceeded to the palace. There, after putting to death those whom they met,<sup>12</sup> they came up to the Magi, who did not lack courage to defend themselves either.<sup>13</sup> For they drew their swords and<sup>2</sup> slew two of the conspirators. Nevertheless they were outnumbered<sup>14</sup> and seized.<sup>14</sup> Gobryas clasped one of them about the waist, and when his accomplices were hesitating, lest they should run him through instead of the Magus, for they were doing the deed<sup>6</sup> in the dark,<sup>15</sup> he bade them thrust the sword into the Magus through his body if need were.<sup>16</sup> Nevertheless fortune so managed it that<sup>17</sup> the Magus was killed without the other man's being hurt.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A favorite Latin period is one which begins with an Abl. Abs., continues with a Subordinate Clause, and concludes with a Principal Clause. <sup>2</sup> Use only one Principal Clause. <sup>3</sup> *nisi quod*. <sup>4</sup> Omit the name here. <sup>5</sup> Remember that a proper name cannot have an adjective in Latin. <sup>6</sup> *res*. <sup>7</sup> Participial expression. <sup>8</sup> *falsus rex*. <sup>9</sup> Use *religio*. <sup>10</sup> 'Fearing that' is implied in the particle. <sup>11</sup> *paenitentia*. <sup>12</sup> *obvius*. <sup>13</sup> *ne...quidem*. <sup>14</sup> = 'were seized by more.' <sup>15</sup> *in obscuro loco*. <sup>16</sup> *vel*. <sup>17</sup> The Principal clause is 'the Magus was killed.' <sup>18</sup> = '(being) unharmed.'

## 3 A.

## HOW DARIUS SOUGHT PEACE FROM ALEXANDER.

69. After the death of his wife Statira, Darius sent ten envoys to propose<sup>1</sup> new terms of peace. A<sup>2</sup> council was summoned, and Alexander ordered them to be introduced. Of these the oldest said: "It<sup>3</sup> is not your power that has brought<sup>4</sup> Darius now for the third time to ask peace at your hands,<sup>5</sup> but it is your justice and self-restraint that have induced<sup>6</sup> him to do so. Were not your moderation<sup>7</sup> known to me I would not say that this is a time when you ought not only to grant peace but to be the first<sup>8</sup> to catch<sup>8</sup> at it. Look back and see<sup>9</sup> how much you have left behind you; behold how much you are aiming at. A dangerous thing is an overburdensome dominion, for it is difficult to keep together what you cannot grasp. Do you see how ships that transcend the ordinary<sup>10</sup> measure cannot be manœuvred?<sup>11</sup> Indeed, I am inclined to think<sup>12</sup> that Darius has lost so many things on this very account,<sup>13</sup> because excessive resources give room<sup>14</sup> for great losses. It is easier to conquer than to keep, Heaven knows.<sup>15</sup> How much more readily our hands seize than hold! The very death of the wife of Darius ought to remind you that your mercy has less scope<sup>16</sup> now than it had."

<sup>1</sup> *ferre*. <sup>2</sup> The Latin would make one sentence out of these two. <sup>3</sup> = 'not your power,' etc. <sup>4</sup> *subigere*. <sup>5</sup> The Latin is uncolored; that is, uses 'you' for 'your hands.' <sup>6</sup> *exprimere*. <sup>7</sup> = 'the moderation of your mind.' <sup>8</sup> Use *occupare*. <sup>9</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>10</sup> *modus*. <sup>11</sup> *regere*. <sup>12</sup> 457, 2. <sup>13</sup> *ideo*. <sup>14</sup> *locum facere*. <sup>15</sup> Use some exclamation; e.g. *mehercle*. <sup>16</sup> = 'less is permitted (*licere*).'

## 3 B.

## SURRENDER OF CELAENAE.

70. Alexander having sent<sup>1</sup> Cleander with money to hire soldiers from the Peloponnesus, and having arranged<sup>1</sup> the affairs of Lycia and Pamphylia, brought up<sup>2</sup> his army to the city of Celaenae. The city he entered, evacuated as it was<sup>3</sup> by its defenders; the citadel, however,<sup>4</sup> in which they had taken refuge he undertook to besiege, but<sup>5</sup> before beginning the siege he sent a herald ahead to warn them that if they did not surrender they would suffer the extreme penalty.<sup>6</sup> They took the herald up to a tower very lofty<sup>7</sup> by nature and by art<sup>8</sup> and<sup>9</sup> told him to behold how great its height was, and to take back word to Alexander that he and the inhabitants did not measure fortifications by the same standard<sup>10</sup>; and<sup>11</sup> that they knew that they could not be taken by storm<sup>12</sup>; and<sup>11</sup> that they would die to the last man for their honor.<sup>13</sup> But when they saw that the citadel was invested, and that the toils<sup>14</sup> were tightening round them more and more day by day, they made a truce for sixty days on these terms,<sup>15</sup> that if Darius did<sup>16</sup> not send them aid within that time they would surrender the citadel. After they found<sup>17</sup> that no help came from that quarter they surrendered to the king by<sup>18</sup> the day appointed.

<sup>1</sup> The use of participles is influenced by voice. <sup>2</sup> *admove*. <sup>3</sup> 'As it was' is unnecessary in the Latin. <sup>4</sup> *vero*; this can be heightened by attaching a particle to the preceding clause. <sup>5</sup> Omit 'but' and combine with preceding clause. <sup>6</sup> *ultima* (Pl.). <sup>7</sup> Use *edere*. <sup>8</sup> = 'by situation and work.' <sup>9</sup> Not two coördinate clauses. <sup>10</sup> *aestimatio*. <sup>11</sup> Omit. <sup>12</sup> *impugnabilis*. <sup>13</sup> = 'faith.' <sup>14</sup> = 'everything had become tighter (*artus*).'  
<sup>15</sup> 'On these terms' is unnecessary, or it may be rendered by *ita*. <sup>16</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>17</sup> Express the perception by the tense. <sup>18</sup> *ad*.



## 3 C.

## HOW ALEXANDER TREATED HIS PHYSICIAN PHILIP.

71. While Alexander was lying ill at Tarsus he received from Parmenio, the most faithful of his courtiers, a letter in which he warned him not to entrust his health to Philip; and told him<sup>1</sup> that he had been bribed<sup>2</sup> by Darius with a thousand talents and the hope of a marriage with<sup>3</sup> his sister. Great was the anxiety which this letter caused<sup>4</sup> him, and whatever suggestion<sup>5</sup> either hope or fear made on either side, he pondered<sup>6</sup> in his heart: "Shall I persist in drinking? so that if poison is given to me, whatever happens to me shall seem to have happened<sup>7</sup> to a man who has not even the plea<sup>8</sup> of not deserving<sup>8</sup> it? Shall I find my physician guilty of<sup>9</sup> faithlessness<sup>10</sup> and so suffer myself to perish before my time<sup>11</sup> in my tent? Well,<sup>12</sup> it is better that I should die by the crime of another than by my own fear." After long and varied reflection,<sup>13</sup> without telling any one the contents<sup>14</sup> of the letter, he sealed it with his own ring and<sup>15</sup> put it under the pillow on which he slept. Two days having been consumed in these meditations, the day fixed upon by the physician dawned, and he entered with the cup in which he had mixed<sup>16</sup> the potion. At sight of him Alexander received the cup and drained it unterrified.

<sup>1</sup> Oratio Obliqua often enters without formal notice. <sup>2</sup> *corrumpere*.

<sup>3</sup> See 360, I, R. 1. <sup>4</sup> *animo sollicitudinem incutere*. <sup>5</sup> Use *subicere*.

<sup>6</sup> Note carefully the tenses in this sentence. <sup>7</sup> Distinguish the three verbs of Happening. <sup>8</sup> *immeritus*. <sup>9</sup> *damnare*. <sup>10</sup> = 'the faith of my physician.' <sup>11</sup> 'Before my time' is included in the verb *opprimere*.

<sup>12</sup> This is a kind of rejoinder to the objections in the previous sentence—what conjunction? <sup>13</sup> = 'his mind having been turned (*versare*) in various (directions).' <sup>14</sup> Indirect question. <sup>15</sup> Not two coördinate clauses.

<sup>16</sup> *diluere*.

## 3 D.

## DARIUS ADDRESSES HIS COUNCIL.

72. A council being called, Darius said: If my lot had been cast<sup>1</sup> with cowards, with men who valued any kind of life more highly than an honorable death, I would keep silent rather than<sup>2</sup> consume words in vain. But as I have tried<sup>3</sup> both your valor and your loyalty by a greater test<sup>4</sup> than I could have wished, I ought rather to strive to be worthy of such friends than to doubt whether you are still like your old<sup>5</sup> selves. Of so many thousands who were under my command, you have followed me twice conquered, twice a fugitive. It is your fidelity and constancy that make me believe myself a king. Traitors and deserters reign in my cities, not assuredly<sup>6</sup> because<sup>7</sup> they are deemed worthy of that great dignity, but in order that you<sup>8</sup> may be tempted by their rewards. Nevertheless you have preferred to follow my fortunes<sup>9</sup> rather than those<sup>10</sup> of the conqueror, and richly deserve<sup>11</sup> that if I should not be able to do it the gods should reward<sup>12</sup> you in my stead. And surely<sup>6</sup> they will reward you. After<sup>13</sup> ages will not be so dumb, nor fame so thankless, as not to raise you to the skies<sup>9</sup> with praises that are your due.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> = 'if fortune had yoked (*iungere*) me with,' etc. <sup>2</sup> 644, R. 3. <sup>3</sup> *experiri*. <sup>4</sup> *documentum*. <sup>5</sup> Unnecessary; 'yourselves' = 'you.' <sup>6</sup> *mehercule* or *hercule*. <sup>7</sup> For the rejected reason, see 541, N. 2. <sup>8</sup> = 'your minds.' <sup>9</sup> English uses Plural where the Latin uses frequently the Singular. <sup>10</sup> Do not forget 308, 3. <sup>11</sup> Use the Superlative of *dignus*. <sup>12</sup> *gratiam referre*. <sup>13</sup> = 'no posterity will be,' etc. <sup>14</sup> = 'owed.'

## 4 A.

## DARIUS HARANGUES HIS SOLDIERS.

73. Darius had arrived about<sup>1</sup> midnight at Arbela, and fortune had directed the flight<sup>2</sup> of a great part of his friends and soldiers to the same place. Having convoked them, he set forth<sup>3</sup> that he did not doubt but that Alexander would seek the most populous towns and the regions that were overflowing<sup>4</sup> with an abundance of everything; that the invader<sup>5</sup> himself and his soldiers had their eyes fixed<sup>6</sup> on a rich<sup>7</sup> booty and one ready to their hands<sup>8</sup>; that in the present state of matters that would be salvation to his cause,<sup>9</sup> inasmuch as he was about to strike for the desert with a light-armed body of troops; that the farthest portions<sup>10</sup> of his empire were still untouched, and<sup>11</sup> from thence he would without difficulty renew his strength for the war. Let the greedy<sup>12</sup> tribe, he said, seize, if they chose,<sup>13</sup> the treasury and after<sup>14</sup> their long hunger glut themselves with gold, for<sup>15</sup> they would presently fall a prey to him; for he had learned by experience that valuable equipment, mistresses, and regiments of eunuchs had been nothing but so much burdensome<sup>16</sup> baggage, and if Alexander dragged after him<sup>17</sup> the same stuff<sup>18</sup> he would be inferior in those very things in which he had been victorious.

<sup>1</sup> *fere*; 677, R. 1. <sup>2</sup> *fugam compellere*. <sup>3</sup> *exponere*. <sup>4</sup> *abundare*.  
<sup>5</sup> *ipse* includes 'invader.' <sup>6</sup> *spectare*. <sup>7</sup> *opimus*. <sup>8</sup> 'To his hand' is here the fuller English for the reflexive. <sup>9</sup> *res* (Pl.). <sup>10</sup> 'Portion' is *pars*, or *regio*, but omit these words and make the construction more after the Silver usage; 372, N. 2. <sup>11</sup> There is no necessity for 'and'; why?  
<sup>12</sup> Remember 302. <sup>13</sup> *sane*. <sup>14</sup> Would you use *post*, or *ex*? <sup>15</sup> 670, 2; use *esse*. <sup>16</sup> 698. <sup>17</sup> 'After him' is unnecessary in the Latin. <sup>18</sup> = 'things.'

## 4 B.

## ON THE TREACHERY OF NABARZANES.

74. While Darius was preparing<sup>1</sup> for battle, Nabarzanes urged him to turn over the command to another, who should be called king only<sup>2</sup> until the enemy withdrew from Asia, and should then restore the throne to him. It is not strange that Darius did not restrain his passion<sup>3</sup> at a proposal like<sup>4</sup> this. So, quoth he, thou scoundrelly<sup>5</sup> slave, thou hast found the occasion thou hast longed for to disclose thy murderous treason<sup>6</sup>; and drawing his scimitar he would have killed him had not Bessus and the Bactrians crowded<sup>7</sup> round him with the appearance<sup>8</sup> of intercession, but in fact with the intention<sup>8</sup> of binding him if he persevered. In the meantime Nabarzanes slipped away, and<sup>9</sup> presently Bessus too followed, and<sup>9</sup> ordered the forces which they commanded to withdraw from the rest of the army. Then Artabazus commenced a strain<sup>10</sup> suited to the existing state of things<sup>11</sup> and began to mollify Darius, reminding him repeatedly of the crisis in which they were,<sup>12</sup> and telling him<sup>13</sup> that he must bear with equanimity, call<sup>14</sup> it the stupidity, call it the<sup>14</sup> mistake of men who, no matter what their character might be,<sup>15</sup> were still his own followers; that Alexander was pressing them hard,<sup>16</sup> even if all were ready to help: what would the case<sup>17</sup> be if those who followed him in his flight should grow alienated?

<sup>1</sup> *parare* is not intransitive in Latin. <sup>2</sup> Express by a correlative. <sup>3</sup> *animo temperare*. <sup>4</sup> = 'such.' <sup>5</sup> Use *malus*, remembering 302. <sup>6</sup> One word, *parricidium*. <sup>7</sup> *circumstare*. <sup>8</sup> Both of these substantives are to be contained in the verb construction; see 602 and 670, 3. <sup>9</sup> Omit and form one sentence. <sup>10</sup> *sententia*. <sup>11</sup> = 'fitting (*convenire*) the present fortune.' <sup>12</sup> 'In which they were' is unnecessary. <sup>13</sup> Express in the structure. <sup>14</sup> *vel—vel*. <sup>15</sup> *qualiscumque*; study in Lexicon. <sup>16</sup> *instare gravem*. <sup>17</sup> = 'happen.'



## 4 C.

## DARIUS LEARNS OF THE DEATH OF HIS WIFE.

75. Amid the confusion of the scene<sup>1</sup> of mourning one of the eunuchs who were about the queen slipped out through the gate, which being on the opposite side<sup>2</sup> from the enemy was less strictly<sup>3</sup> guarded, and reached the camp of Darius, and being received by the sentries was taken to the tent of the king. As soon as Darius beheld him, excited by the manifold expectation of trouble<sup>4</sup> and uncertain what he should fear most, said<sup>5</sup>: Thy countenance shows<sup>6</sup> a great evil, I know not what, but see<sup>7</sup> to it that thou spare not the ears of a miserable creature; I have learned to be unhappy, and it is often a solace of calamity to know one's<sup>8</sup> fate. Are you about to announce what I most suspect and fear<sup>9</sup> to utter, the disgraceful treatment<sup>10</sup> of my dear ones, which is<sup>11</sup> to me, and as I believe to them also, more bitter<sup>12</sup> than all punishment? To this the eunuch replied: Far from that<sup>13</sup>: all<sup>14</sup> the honor that can be paid<sup>15</sup> to queens by subjects<sup>16</sup> has been showed toward your family by the conqueror, but thy wife departed this life a short time since. Then not only groans but wailings were heard over the whole camp, for Darius did not doubt that she had been killed because she could not endure outrage.

<sup>1</sup> 'Of the mourners' (participle). <sup>2</sup> *aversus*. <sup>3</sup> *levius*. <sup>4</sup> *dolor*. <sup>5</sup> 648, R. 2. <sup>6</sup> *praeferre*. <sup>7</sup> 'See to it that...not,' *cave*. <sup>8</sup> 309, 1, 2d paragraph. <sup>9</sup> What is the construction when a verb of Fear is a verb of negative Will? 550, N. 5. <sup>10</sup> *ludibria* (Pl.). <sup>11</sup> 'Which is' is unnecessary. <sup>12</sup> *tristis*. <sup>13</sup> = 'that indeed is far distant.' <sup>14</sup> = 'however great.' <sup>15</sup> *habere*. <sup>16</sup> = 'those who obey.'

## 4 D.

## ON THE EXPLOITS OF AMYNTAS.

76. In the meantime Amyntas with 4,000 Greeks, who followed him out of the battle, made his escape<sup>1</sup> to Tripolis. Thence embarking his soldiers he crossed over to Cyprus, and as he thought that in that position of things each one would have whatever he seized, as if it were a settled and lawful possession,<sup>2</sup> he determined to strike<sup>3</sup> for Egypt, being an enemy to both kings and always dependent<sup>4</sup> on the wavering change of fortune.<sup>5</sup> And rousing the soldiers to these great expectations<sup>6</sup> he informed them that Sabaces, the commandant of Egypt, had fallen in battle; that the garrison of Persians was both without a leader and weak; that the Aegyptians, always hostile to their commandants, would regard them as allies, not as enemies. Necessity compelled them to try all resources,<sup>7</sup> for when fortune disappoints<sup>8</sup> our first hopes, the future<sup>9</sup> seems preferable to the present. Therefore they cried out with one voice<sup>10</sup> that he might lead them whithersoever he thought good. Thinking it was well to strike while the iron was hot<sup>11</sup> he pushed on to Pelusium, pretending that he had been despatched by Darius, and having taken Pelusium moved his forces to Memphis. At the news<sup>12</sup> of this the Aegyptians, a fickle race and one more fitted for starting a revolution<sup>13</sup> than for following<sup>14</sup> it up, collected in hot haste<sup>10</sup> from all their villages and towns to destroy the Persian garrisons.

<sup>1</sup> = 'arrived in his flight.' <sup>2</sup> = 'as if possessed with certain right.'  
<sup>3</sup> *petere*. <sup>4</sup> *pendere*. <sup>5</sup> = 'times.' <sup>6</sup> = 'to the hope of so great a thing.'  
<sup>7</sup> 'Resources' is due to the color of the English and need not be translated.  
<sup>8</sup> *destituere*. <sup>9</sup> Make it concrete. <sup>10</sup> Express by the preposition in the verb. <sup>11</sup> = 'that he ought to avail himself of (*uti*) their spirits while they were aglow (*calere*) with hope.' <sup>12</sup> *fama*. <sup>13</sup> *novare res*. <sup>14</sup> *gerere*.

## 5 A.

## THE BAD STRATEGY OF ARSAMES.

77. Alexander with all his forces had reached the region which is called the Camp of Cyrus. This was fifty stadia distant from the pass<sup>1</sup> by which we enter Cilicia. Therefore Arsames, who was in command of Cilicia, reflecting<sup>2</sup> on the advice<sup>3</sup> Memnon had given in the beginning of the war, resolved, now<sup>4</sup> that it was too late, to carry out a plan that had once been wholesome. So<sup>5</sup> he laid Cilicia waste with fire and sword to make a solitude for the enemy; whatever could be of use he ruined,<sup>6</sup> determined<sup>7</sup> to leave the soil which he could not protect, barren and naked. But it would have been far more practical to occupy the narrow pass which led<sup>8</sup> into Cilicia with a strong garrison, and to hold the ridge which gave an easy command of<sup>9</sup> the road, so that from that point<sup>10</sup> he might without loss<sup>11</sup> have either kept back or crushed the enemy as he came up. Then having left a few men to garrison the narrow pass, he himself retired, the devastator of a country which he ought to have maintained free<sup>12</sup> from devastation. And so those who were left, deeming themselves betrayed, did not have the courage<sup>13</sup> even to withstand the sight of the enemy, although a smaller number might have maintained<sup>14</sup> the position.

<sup>1</sup> *aditus*. <sup>2</sup> *reputare* with an Indirect Question. <sup>3</sup> Use *suadere*.

<sup>4</sup> 'Now that it was' is not necessary in the Latin. <sup>5</sup> This is involved in the following statement, but may be translated by *itaque*. <sup>6</sup> *corrumpere*. <sup>7</sup> Silver Latin introduces a short way of translating such ideas; see 670. <sup>8</sup> = 'by which we enter.' <sup>9</sup> = 'which overhung (*imminere*).'

<sup>10</sup> Relative. <sup>11</sup> *inultus*. <sup>12</sup> *vindicare*. <sup>13</sup> *valere*. <sup>14</sup> *obtinere*.

## 5 B.

## THE FALSE TIDINGS OF DARIUS' DEATH.

78. Alexander, having learned that false tidings of the death of Darius had been brought to the captive ladies, bade Leonnatus tell them that they were mourning<sup>1</sup> without reason<sup>2</sup> for a living man. Leonnatus, with a few armed attendants, came to the tent in which the captives were, and ordered it to be announced<sup>3</sup> that he had been sent by the king. But the servants who were in the vestibule, as soon as they caught sight of armed men, thinking that it was all over<sup>4</sup> with their mistresses, ran into the pavilion, screaming out that their last hour<sup>5</sup> had come and that men<sup>6</sup> were sent to kill the captives. And so, as they<sup>7</sup> had neither the power<sup>8</sup> to keep them out nor the courage<sup>8</sup> to let them in, the ladies gave no answer and awaited in silence the good pleasure<sup>9</sup> of the conqueror. Leonnatus, after waiting a long time, when he found<sup>10</sup> that no one dared to come forth, left his attendants in the vestibule and entered the tent. Thereupon the mother and wife of Darius threw<sup>11</sup> themselves at his feet and began to beg that before they were slain he would permit them to bury the body of Darius after the custom of their country<sup>12</sup>; having performed this last duty to the king, they would die with firmness.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *lamentari*. <sup>2</sup> *falso*. <sup>3</sup> Make this idiomatic according to 532, N. 2. <sup>4</sup> *actum esse de*. <sup>5</sup> The Latin also has the phrase. <sup>6</sup> While *homines* might be used, the Latin prefers to omit the colorless subject wherever possible. <sup>7</sup> *ut qui*; 626 and N. 1. <sup>8</sup> Verbs. <sup>9</sup> *arbitrium*. <sup>10</sup> Remember 562. <sup>11</sup> *provolvere*; 218. <sup>12</sup> *patrius*. <sup>13</sup> *impigre*.



## 5 C.

## THE GREEN OLD AGE OF ARTABAZUS.

79. Alexander had now entered the most remote region<sup>1</sup> of Hyrcania, when he was met by Artabazus, who, as we have said above, had been most faithful to Darius, together with his children and a small body of Greek soldiers. The king offered him his right hand as he came up, for he had been a guest of Philip's when an exile<sup>2</sup> under the reign of Ochus, and yet<sup>3</sup> his fidelity to his own king was preserved to the last and<sup>4</sup> proved too strong for<sup>5</sup> the pledges of hospitality. So, being affably received, he said: "I beg the gods, sire,<sup>6</sup> that you may flourish in perpetual happiness. I am blessed<sup>7</sup> in everything else; by one thing only am I distressed, and that is, that<sup>8</sup> owing to my advanced<sup>9</sup> age<sup>10</sup> I cannot long enjoy your kindness." He was then in<sup>11</sup> his 95th year. Nine young men, all born of the same mother, accompanied the father; Artabazus presented them to the king,<sup>12</sup> praying that they might live only so long as they should be useful to Alexander. The king was accustomed to march for the most part on foot; but then he ordered horses to be brought for himself and Artabazus, lest the old man, if he went afoot,<sup>13</sup> should blush to ride on horseback.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use the Silver Latin construction with *ultimus*; 372, N. 2. <sup>2</sup> Use verb. <sup>3</sup> The contrast need not always be expressed by a particle—it is often involved in *et—et*. <sup>4</sup> Omit the conjunction and make all one clause. <sup>5</sup> = 'conquer.' <sup>6</sup> = 'king.' <sup>7</sup> Use *laetus*. <sup>8</sup> It is necessary often to fill out in the English what the Latin implies in the construction; 'and that is' is such a supplement. <sup>9</sup> *praeceps*. <sup>10</sup> = 'old age.' <sup>11</sup> Expressions of age are much varied; here *agere* is to be employed. <sup>12</sup> = 'brought them to (*admovere*) the king's right hand.' <sup>13</sup> *peditem ire*, or *ingredi*. <sup>14</sup> = 'on a horse.'

## 5 D.

## THE RESPONSE OF THE ORACLE TO ALEXANDER.

80. As the king approached <sup>1</sup> the sacred grove of Ammon, the eldest of the priests called him son, affirming that his father Jove gave him that name. And he, forgetting that he was a human being, <sup>2</sup> replied that he accepted and acknowledged the title.<sup>3</sup> He then asked <sup>4</sup> if the fates destined for him the empire of the whole world. With the same assumption of servile obeisance,<sup>5</sup> the priest declared that he would be the ruler of all the earth. After this he urged the inquiry <sup>6</sup> whether all the assassins of his father had been punished. The priest said that his father could not be reached <sup>7</sup> by any deed of violence,<sup>7</sup> but that Philip's murderers had all paid for their crime. Then, having offered sacrifice, Alexander gave gifts both to the priests and to the god, and granted <sup>8</sup> his friends permission <sup>8</sup> to consult Jove also for themselves.<sup>9</sup> They asked nothing further than whether he gave them authority <sup>10</sup> to worship their king with divine honors. The seer replied that this, too, would be acceptable to Jove. To one who weighed the credibility of the oracles with true and healthy judgment,<sup>11</sup> these responses might well have seemed idle; but fortune makes those whom she has compelled to trust herself alone for the most part more eager for glory than fit <sup>12</sup> for it.

<sup>1</sup> *propius adire*. <sup>2</sup> = 'forgetful of the lot of man (*humana sors*).'

<sup>3</sup> Omit. <sup>4</sup> 'To ask' an oracle is *consulere*. <sup>5</sup> = 'composed to obeisance (*adulatio*).'<sup>6</sup> *instare quaerere*. <sup>7</sup> *scelere violari*. <sup>8</sup> Use two synonyms, thus: 'it was granted and permitted'; this is a common Latin device.

<sup>9</sup> Use *ipse*. <sup>10</sup> *auctorem esse*. <sup>11</sup> *aestimatio*. <sup>12</sup> *capax*.

## 6 A.

## ON THE CHARACTER OF MAXIMINUS.

81. After the death of Alexander Severus, Maximinus, having made himself master of the state,<sup>1</sup> produced a great revolution,<sup>2</sup> and used the power that he had obtained harshly and fiercely, so that he tried to change everything from an easy and gentle sway to a cruel<sup>3</sup> tyranny. For knowing that he was hateful to the public<sup>4</sup> because he was the first who from a low station had attained his<sup>5</sup> high position,<sup>6</sup> he bent all his efforts<sup>7</sup> to strengthen his rule by cruelty; fearing, forsooth, lest he should become too contemptible in the sight of the senate and all others under the sway<sup>8</sup> of Rome, looking, as they did,<sup>9</sup> not so much at his present fortune as at the obscurity of his birth.<sup>10</sup> For it was perfectly<sup>11</sup> well known to the whole world that he had been a shepherd in the mountains of Thrace, and that afterwards he had been enrolled among the soldiers of that region on account of his immense size<sup>12</sup> and personal strength,<sup>12</sup> and as it were guided by the leading strings<sup>13</sup> of fortune to be emperor of Rome. Wherefore he speedily got rid of all the friends of Alexander and the counselors selected for him by the senate, in order to be alone in the army and to have no one near him who should feel<sup>14</sup> himself superior on account of noble birth.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> = 'gained possession of affairs.' <sup>2</sup> = 'changed the condition of affairs violently.' <sup>3</sup> Use the abstract. <sup>4</sup> = 'men.' <sup>5</sup> Reflexive would be too strong; hence use *is*. <sup>6</sup> = 'fortune.' <sup>7</sup> = 'gave his attention to that particularly,' etc. <sup>8</sup> *Romanæ ditionis*. <sup>9</sup> 'As they did' is an English addition: this whole clause is not causal, but indicates rather the situation; read 570, N. 1. <sup>10</sup> Classical Latin would use *genus*; Silver Latin also uses *natales*. <sup>11</sup> Translate by combining two synonyms, as in Ex. 80, Note 8. <sup>12</sup> = 'the size (*vastitas*) and strength of his body.' <sup>13</sup> = 'by the hand.' <sup>14</sup> = 'superior by reason of his consciousness (*conscientia*) of nobility.'

## 6 B.

PERTINAX IS INFORMED OF THE DEATH OF COMMODUS.

82. At dead<sup>1</sup> of night, when everybody was fast<sup>2</sup> asleep, Laetus and Electus, with a few of the same faction, went to see Pertinax, and finding his gate shut, woke up the gate-keeper. As soon as he opened to them and saw that soldiers were there and their commander Laetus, frightened out of his senses<sup>3</sup> he carried the news to Pertinax. Pertinax ordered them to be admitted on the spot, saying that all the evils which he had forboded for himself up to that day would soon come to pass. So great, moreover, was his firmness that he did not even stir<sup>4</sup> out of his bed or change his mien<sup>5</sup>; but when Laetus and Electus came in, although he believed that they were sent to kill him, with a bold countenance, untouched by pallor,<sup>6</sup> he said: "I had been looking for a long time, yes,<sup>7</sup> every night, for this end of my life; for<sup>8</sup> I alone was still left of the friends of his father. And so I was wondering very much<sup>9</sup> to what end Commodus was putting off the business<sup>10</sup> so long. Why then do you stand there idle<sup>11</sup>? On!<sup>12</sup> execute your orders, and deliver me at length from a depressing and unceasing fear."

<sup>1</sup> *intempestus*. <sup>2</sup> Involved in the verb *sopire*. <sup>3</sup> Best expressed by co-ordinating two participles of similar meaning, as 'frightened and terrified'; see Ex. 80, Note 8. <sup>4</sup> This can be made much more emphatic by the tense; see 513. <sup>5</sup> *habitus oris*. <sup>6</sup> = 'by no means pale.' <sup>7</sup> *etiam*. <sup>8</sup> Use a relative connection. <sup>9</sup> Can be expressed, if you desire, by the preposition in the verb. <sup>10</sup> *res*. <sup>11</sup> 'Idle' fills out the English but is unnecessary in the Latin. <sup>12</sup> Use *quin*.



## 6 C.

## ON HORATIUS COCLES.

83. I think it worthy of note<sup>1</sup> that, when P. Horatius Cocles on the Sublician bridge had alone received the charge of the enemy, and when the bridge was cut down behind him had swum safe<sup>2</sup> across to his comrades, the Roman people was grateful toward this<sup>3</sup> great valor, and besides setting<sup>4</sup> up a bronze statue in the comitium gave him as much land as he should plow<sup>5</sup> around in one day; since as their resources were moderate it was necessary that the rewards of great deeds<sup>6</sup> of valor should be moderate likewise. But this is also worthy of being mentioned, that he was unwilling to receive even that trifling<sup>7</sup> reward; not that he scouted it as too little, but because he thought that he was a useless citizen who wished to be richer than the other citizens on account of a deed done<sup>8</sup> in the public service, and did not rather regard<sup>9</sup> as a sufficient reward the simple<sup>10</sup> consciousness of a good deed and the affection and good-will of his fellow-citizens. Quite similar is the account<sup>11</sup> given by Seneca, according<sup>12</sup> to whom, unless he is mistaken, Cocles said,<sup>13</sup> when the reward was being decreed: "You have no use for a citizen," quoth he, "who has use for more than one citizen has use for."

<sup>1</sup> *observatio*. <sup>2</sup> The Latin has the same construction of predicate attribution as the English; 325 and R. 6. <sup>3</sup> *tantus* will cover both words. <sup>4</sup> 437, N. 2. <sup>5</sup> Be careful as to mood and tense. <sup>6</sup> 204, N. 5. <sup>7</sup> Use a compound of *-cumque*. <sup>8</sup> = 'done (*navare*) for the state.' <sup>9</sup> *ponere in*. <sup>10</sup> *ipse*. <sup>11</sup> Use a concrete form = 'not differently does Seneca narrate about the same matter.' <sup>12</sup> An English form; the Latin translates by the simple relative: 'unless who (for 'and unless he') is mistaken.' <sup>13</sup> Omit.

## 6 D.

## A STORY ABOUT YOUNG PAPIRIUS.

84 The senate having resolved <sup>1</sup> that no one should disclose the matter that they had discussed before it was decreed, the mother of young <sup>2</sup> Papirius, who had been in the senate-house with his father, pressed <sup>3</sup> him to tell her what the senators had done in session.<sup>4</sup> He said that the question <sup>5</sup> before the senate had been whether it seemed to be more useful and more to the interest of <sup>6</sup> the state that one man should have two wives or that one woman should have two husbands. When she heard this she was terribly frightened,<sup>7</sup> and went out quivering with excitement to the other matrons. The next day a host of married women came to the senate, and with tears <sup>8</sup> and adjurations<sup>8</sup> besought the senators to let <sup>9</sup> one woman have two husbands <sup>10</sup> rather than that two women should have but one. The senators as they entered the senate-house wondered what that outbreak of the women and that petition meant.<sup>11</sup> Then the boy Papirius stepped out into the midst of the senate and told the whole story, as it had happened: what his mother had insisted on hearing and what he had told his mother. The senate showed their loving admiration <sup>12</sup> of the trustiness and cleverness of the boy, and made a decree <sup>13</sup> that hereafter boys should not come into the senate-house with their fathers except Papirius only.

<sup>1</sup> Use *placere*. <sup>2</sup> = 'the boy.' <sup>3</sup> *percontari*. <sup>4</sup> *senatus*. <sup>5</sup> *agī*, 'to be the question.' <sup>6</sup> Use *ex*. <sup>7</sup> *animus compavescit*, 'I am terribly frightened.' <sup>8</sup> Use participles. <sup>9</sup> Implied in the final clause. <sup>10</sup> Use *nubere*. <sup>11</sup> *velle*. <sup>12</sup> For 'show loving admiration' use *exosculari*. <sup>13</sup> *consultum facere*.

## 7 A.

## FREEDOM A REWARD OF VALOR.

85. As soon as the general heard that the enemy had pitched his camp about three miles from the city and was ravaging the country from that point,<sup>1</sup> he too quitted the walls and took up a position<sup>2</sup> about a mile from the enemy. The legions that he had were made up<sup>3</sup> in large measure of volunteer slaves who had now over a year<sup>4</sup> preferred earning their freedom in silence<sup>5</sup> to demanding it openly.<sup>5</sup> Yet as he was leaving winter-quarters he had heard murmurs of the soldiers on the march, asking<sup>6</sup> whether they should ever do military service as freemen, and he had written to the senate that up to that day he had got<sup>7</sup> from them good and gallant service, and that they lacked nothing to attain<sup>8</sup> the standard<sup>8</sup> of the regular soldier except freedom. Leave was given him to act in the matter as he deemed to be best<sup>9</sup> for the commonwealth. And so before joining battle with the enemy, he gave notice that the time had come for them to win the freedom they had so long hoped for. On the next day he would fight to a finish<sup>10</sup> a pitched battle<sup>11</sup> on a fair and open field, where the matter could be decided by sheer<sup>12</sup> bravery, without any fear of ambuscade. Whoever should bring back the head of an enemy he would order to be free on the spot.

<sup>1</sup> *inde*. <sup>2</sup> = 'placed (*locare*) his camp.' <sup>3</sup> = 'he had legions of volunteer slaves (*volō*) for the most part.' <sup>4</sup> See 294. <sup>5</sup> Make this rhetorical; see 682. <sup>6</sup> The Roman says, 'murmur in the line-of-march of (those) asking,' etc. <sup>7</sup> *uti*. <sup>8</sup> *ad exemplum*. <sup>9</sup> *ex*. <sup>10</sup> Indicated by *di-* in composition. <sup>11</sup> Use *signa conferre*. <sup>12</sup> = 'true.'

## 7 B.

## THE RIGOR OF THE GENERAL PAPIRIUS.

86. The dictator Papirius, when contrary to his commands Fabius his master of horse had led the army out to battle,<sup>1</sup> although he had routed the Samnites before<sup>2</sup> he returned to camp, yet moved neither by his valor nor his success nor his rank, ordered the rods to be got out<sup>3</sup> and Fabius to be stripped. What a marvelous spectacle! one<sup>4</sup> who was both a Fabius and master of horse and a victor, with rent garments and bared<sup>5</sup> body offered himself to the torture of the lictor's lash.<sup>6</sup> Then the army by its entreaties procured<sup>7</sup> for Fabius the opportunity of taking refuge in the city, where he implored the interference<sup>11</sup> of the senate in vain; for notwithstanding<sup>8</sup> all this,<sup>8</sup> Papirius persevered in exacting the penalty, and so Fabius' father was compelled to appeal<sup>9</sup> to the people and to beg on his knees<sup>10</sup> for the interference<sup>11</sup> of the tribunes in behalf of his son. And yet not even by this could the rigor of Papirius be curbed. Finally,<sup>12</sup> when he was entreated by the citizens in a body and by the tribunes of the people themselves, he protested that he remitted<sup>13</sup> the penalty not to Fabius but to the people of Rome and the power of the tribunes.

<sup>1</sup> *acies*. <sup>2</sup> Omit this subordination and make one clause from 'although.' <sup>3</sup> *expedire*. <sup>4</sup> 'One who was' is necessary in English to avoid awkwardness. <sup>5</sup> Use *spoliare* as more picturesque; *nudare* would also do. <sup>6</sup> = 'offered himself to the lashes of the lictors to be tortured (*lacerare*).' <sup>7</sup> *dare*. <sup>8</sup> One word. <sup>9</sup> *rem devocare*. <sup>10</sup> *supplex*. <sup>11</sup> = 'aid.'  
<sup>12</sup> *ceterum*. <sup>13</sup> *concedere*.



## 7 C.

## THE MILD TEMPER OF ANTIGONUS.

87. What would have been easier for Antigonus to do than to order two private soldiers to be taken off<sup>1</sup> to punishment, who while leaning against the royal tent were doing what people who think ill of their king do, to their great satisfaction,<sup>2</sup> though<sup>3</sup> at great risk?<sup>2</sup> Antigonus had heard everything, for<sup>4</sup> there was only a curtain between the speaker<sup>5</sup> and the hearer.<sup>5</sup> This he moved slightly and said: "Get further off lest the king hear you." This same Antigonus one night having heard some of his soldiers imprecating all manner<sup>6</sup> of evils on the king for having led them into that road with<sup>7</sup> its inextricable mud, went up to those who were in most trouble<sup>8</sup> and after he had got them out, they<sup>9</sup> not knowing by whom they were assisted: "Now," quoth he, "curse Antigonus, by whose fault you have fallen into these miseries, but wish well to him who has drawn you out of this slough." This same Antigonus, when the enemy was besieged in a small fortress, and, full<sup>10</sup> of confidence in the strength of their position,<sup>10</sup> ridiculed now Antigonus' small stature, now his broken nose: "I rejoice," said he, "and I hope for some blessing,<sup>11</sup> if I have Silenus in my camp."

<sup>1</sup> *ducere*. <sup>2</sup> Use adverbs, *libentissime*; etc. <sup>3</sup> Juxtaposition does not exclude contrast; so *et—et* may be used here. <sup>4</sup> Strengthen by *utpote*. <sup>5</sup> As these indicate only temporary conditions, a participle is to be used; see 437. <sup>6</sup> 'Manner of' is an English addition. <sup>7</sup> Employ Hendiadys. <sup>8</sup> *laborare*. <sup>9</sup> The English Nominative Absolute cannot always be translated by the Abl. Abs. in Latin; 410, R. 3. <sup>10</sup> Express the whole clause by two Latin words: 'out of trust in the place.' <sup>11</sup> *bonum*.

## 7 D.

## ON THE BATTLE OF ACTIUM.

88. When the contest began,<sup>1</sup> everything was on one side,<sup>2</sup> general, rowers, soldiers ; on the other, nothing except soldiers. The first<sup>3</sup> to flee was Cleopatra. Antony preferred to be the companion of the fugitive<sup>4</sup> queen than that of his fighting soldiers, and the commander who ought to have inflicted severe punishment<sup>5</sup> on deserters became a deserter of his own army. But even when their chief<sup>6</sup> had drawn off,<sup>6</sup> they continued steadily for a long time to fight gallantly,<sup>7</sup> and in despair<sup>8</sup> of victory strove<sup>9</sup> unto death. Caesar, desiring to soothe by words those whom he could have destroyed by the sword, cried out that Antony had fled, and kept asking for whom and with whom they were fighting. After struggling<sup>9</sup> a long time for their absent leader, they laid down their arms with reluctance<sup>10</sup> and yielded the victory. And Caesar promised them life and liberty more readily than they were persuaded<sup>11</sup> to ask for them. And it was agreed that the soldiers had played the part<sup>12</sup> of an excellent<sup>13</sup> general, but the general that of a cowardly<sup>13</sup> soldier ; so that one may well doubt whether he who fled at the will of Cleopatra would have employed<sup>14</sup> his victory according to his own pleasure or hers.

<sup>1</sup> *inire*. <sup>2</sup> *pars*. <sup>3</sup> Use *fugam occupare*. <sup>4</sup> Participle, like 'fighting.'  
<sup>5</sup> 'Inflict severe punishment,' *saevire*. <sup>6</sup> = 'their head was taken away.'  
<sup>7</sup> = 'firmness in fighting gallantly lasted (*durare*) for a long time.'  
<sup>8</sup> Abl. Abs. <sup>9</sup> *dimicare*. <sup>10</sup> *aegre*. <sup>11</sup> Remember 217. <sup>12</sup> *officio fungi*.  
<sup>13</sup> See 302. <sup>14</sup> *temperare*.

## 8 A.

## DOMITIUS DISSEMBLES.

89. Domitius<sup>1</sup> had betaken himself with all his troops to Corfinium. Thither<sup>1</sup> Caesar hastened and began to surround the town with a line<sup>2</sup> of works. When the greater part of this work was accomplished the messengers whom Domitius had sent to Pompey to ask for assistance returned with a letter. After reading the letter through, Domitius, keeping back the truth,<sup>3</sup> announced in the presence of the council that Pompey would speedily come to their assistance and exhorted them not to let<sup>4</sup> their spirits fail,<sup>4</sup> and to prepare what would be serviceable for defending the town. He himself in secret conferred with a few<sup>5</sup> of his intimates and determined to take measures<sup>6</sup> for flight. As Domitius' countenance did not harmonize with his language and all his actions<sup>7</sup> were more agitated and timid than had been usual<sup>8</sup> with him in the preceding days, and as he conferred much with his officers in secret contrary to his wont and avoided deliberative meetings<sup>9</sup> and general gatherings,<sup>9</sup> the matter could no longer be covered up and disguised.<sup>3</sup> For Pompey had written word back that he would not bring the matter to a final issue,<sup>10</sup> and that it was not by his counsel or wish that Domitius had betaken himself to the town of Corfinium: and consequently<sup>11</sup> if he got an opportunity he must come to him with all his forces.

<sup>1</sup> Only one clause. <sup>2</sup> = 'with a rampart and redoubts (*castellum*).'

<sup>3</sup> *dissimulare*. <sup>4</sup> *animo deficere*. <sup>5</sup> The Partition is not felt in the Latin. <sup>6</sup> *consilium*. <sup>7</sup> Use *agere*. <sup>8</sup> *consuescere*. <sup>9</sup> Single words, to be contrasted. <sup>10</sup> *in summum periculum deducere*. <sup>11</sup> *proinde*.

## 8 B.

## THE MOTIVES OF CAESAR'S ENEMIES.

90. Cato was incited to oppose <sup>1</sup> Caesar by old grudges and by resentment at his defeat. Lentulus was moved thereto by the greatness of his indebtedness and by the hope of getting <sup>2</sup> an army and provinces, and by the expected <sup>2</sup> bribes of those who wished <sup>3</sup> the title of king, and he boasted that he would be the second Sulla of his line <sup>4</sup> to whom the sovereignty should fall by rights.<sup>5</sup> Scipio was impelled <sup>6</sup> by the same hope of a province and of armies which he thought he would share with Pompey on the ground of <sup>7</sup> his connection and at the same time by fear of the courts.<sup>8</sup> Pompey himself, egged on <sup>9</sup> by the enemies of Caesar and by his own unwillingness <sup>10</sup> that anyone should be made equal to him in rank, turned his back <sup>11</sup> on his friendship with Caesar and made up <sup>12</sup> with their common enemies, the greatest part of whom he had made Caesar shoulder <sup>13</sup> at the period of their connection by marriage. He was at the same time greatly excited by the disgrace he <sup>14</sup> had brought upon himself by reason <sup>14</sup> of two legions which he had diverted from an expedition to Asia and Syria to support <sup>15</sup> his own power and supremacy, and he was therefore eager that the matter should be brought to the arbitrament of arms.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> = 'roused against' ; avoid the Passive. <sup>2</sup> Unnecessary in the Latin. <sup>3</sup> Can be well idiomatically translated by a Gerundive. <sup>4</sup> = 'among his (people).' <sup>5</sup> Use *redire*, which involves 'by rights.' <sup>6</sup> Avoid the Passive. <sup>7</sup> *pro*. <sup>8</sup> *iudicium*. <sup>9</sup> = 'roused.' <sup>10</sup> Here we have an abstract expression which the Latin avoids, so change to 'because he was unwilling.' <sup>11</sup> *totum avertere*. <sup>12</sup> *in gratiam redire*. <sup>13</sup> use *iniungere*. <sup>14</sup> 'The disgrace of two legions' covers the whole idea. <sup>15</sup> *ad*. <sup>16</sup> *deducere ad arma*.



## 8 C.

## THE CONFERENCE OF GAIUS AND LUCIUS CAESAR.

91. Assured <sup>1</sup> of the support <sup>2</sup> of the soldiers, Caesar set out for Ariminum with the thirteenth legion and there met the tribunes of the people, who fled to him for protection <sup>3</sup>; he summoned the rest of the legions from winter-quarters and ordered them to follow on. To that point came L. Caesar the younger, <sup>4</sup> whose father was Caesar's lieutenant. After getting through with <sup>5</sup> the rest of the interview which he had come for, he said that he had commissions of a private character <sup>6</sup> from Pompey to Caesar. Pompey <sup>7</sup> wished to have <sup>8</sup> himself justified to Caesar, so that he might not interpret <sup>9</sup> as a personal <sup>10</sup> insult to himself what he had done for the sake of the state. He (P.) had always deemed the interests of the state as more important <sup>11</sup> than private ties, and Caesar ought also in conformity <sup>12</sup> with his high position to waive <sup>13</sup> both his partisanship and his anger in the interest of the state and not to be so seriously angry with his enemies as to injure the state in <sup>14</sup> hopes of injuring them. Although this seemed to have nothing to do <sup>15</sup> with lessening his wrongs, nevertheless having procured suitable persons for conveying his wishes <sup>16</sup> to Pompey, Caesar sent word by them that he was ready to make every concession <sup>17</sup> and to endure everything for the sake of the state.

<sup>1</sup> *cognoscere*. <sup>2</sup> *voluntas*. <sup>3</sup> 'For protection' is involved in the *con-*.  
<sup>4</sup> 'Junior' is the English; Latin uses *adulescens*, or *minor*. <sup>5</sup> ' = finish up.' <sup>6</sup> *officium*. <sup>7</sup> These are the commissions. <sup>8</sup> See 219. <sup>9</sup> *vertere*.  
<sup>10</sup> *suus*. <sup>11</sup> *habere potiora*, 'deem of more importance.' <sup>12</sup> *pro*. <sup>13</sup> *dimittere*.  
<sup>14</sup> Use *cum*. <sup>15</sup> *pertinere*. <sup>16</sup> Relative. <sup>17</sup> = 'descend to everything.'

## 8 D.

THE SOLDIERS PUNISH THE DASTARDLY CONDUCT OF THEIR  
GENERAL.

92. The design of Domitius having been made generally<sup>1</sup> known, the soldiers who were at Corfinium went off by themselves<sup>2</sup> in the first evening watch-hour<sup>3</sup> and conferred with one another<sup>4</sup> through the military tribunes, the centurions, and the most reputable of their own rank<sup>5</sup> to the effect that<sup>6</sup> they were besieged by Caesar, that the siege works were nearly finished, that their general Domitius, through hope and trust in whom they had remained at their posts,<sup>7</sup> had left them all in the lurch<sup>8</sup> and was meditating flight; that they ought to have regard<sup>9</sup> for their own safety. From these at first the Marsian legion<sup>10</sup> began to differ and occupied that part of the town which seemed<sup>11</sup> best fortified, and such a dissension arose among them that they tried to join in hand-to-hand<sup>12</sup> fight and settle the question<sup>13</sup> by arms. However, a little while after, messengers were sent backwards and forwards, and they found out what they did not know before, the story<sup>14</sup> about the projected<sup>14</sup> flight of Domitius. And so all with one accord<sup>15</sup> brought Domitius forth to the soldiers,<sup>16</sup> surrounded him, put a guard over him, and sent representatives from their number to Caesar, saying<sup>6</sup> that they were ready to open the gates and to do whatever he commanded, and to give up Domitius alive into his power.

<sup>1</sup> Express by the preposition *di-* in composition. <sup>2</sup> *prima vesperi*.  
<sup>3</sup> = 'made a secession.' <sup>4</sup> 221. <sup>5</sup> *genus*. <sup>6</sup> This merely introduces the  
 Oratio Obliqua. <sup>7</sup> 'At their posts' is involved in the verb. <sup>8</sup> 'Leave in  
 the lurch,' *proicere*. <sup>9</sup> *rationem habere*. <sup>10</sup> *Marsi*. <sup>11</sup> Keep the Marsian  
 point of view. <sup>12</sup> A phrase with *manus*. <sup>13</sup> Merely *dimicare*. <sup>14</sup> Unneces-  
 sary in the Latin. <sup>15</sup> *uno consilio*. <sup>16</sup> *in publicum*.

## 9 A.

## ON THE METHOD OF CONSULTING THE SENATE.

93. When Pompey was about to enter upon his first consulship, since owing to the length<sup>1</sup> of his military career he was unacquainted with the business<sup>2</sup> of holding and consulting the senate, he asked Varro, an intimate friend of his, to write an introductory<sup>3</sup> treatise from which he might learn what he ought<sup>4</sup> to do and say when he consulted the senate. The book which he had made on the subject<sup>5</sup> for Pompey was lost, as Varro says in a letter which he wrote<sup>6</sup> to Oppian, and in which, as what he had written before was not extant, he states afresh many points pertaining<sup>7</sup> to the matter. In the first place he lays<sup>8</sup> down who they were by whom according to the custom of our ancestors the senate was wont to be held, and mentions them by name. Afterwards he wrote about intervention,<sup>9</sup> and he said that only those had the right of intervention<sup>10</sup> against<sup>11</sup> a decree of the senate who had the same power as those who wish to carry the decree of the senate, or<sup>12</sup> greater power. Then he added something on the places in which a decree of the senate could rightly<sup>13</sup> be made, and showed that it was not valid unless it had been made in a place appointed through an augur.

<sup>1</sup> *tempora*; use *per* for 'owing to.' <sup>2</sup> Unnecessary in the Latin. <sup>3</sup> *introductionis*. <sup>4</sup> Not Gerundive; why? <sup>5</sup> *res*. <sup>6</sup> *dare* is often used of letters. <sup>7</sup> *ducere* is sometimes used in the sense of *pertinere*. <sup>8</sup> Latin keeps the image. <sup>9</sup> As this was the privilege of a number, the Latin prefers the Plural. <sup>10</sup> Of course, the verb. <sup>11</sup> = 'that it might not be carried (*facere*).'<sup>12</sup> *aut, ve, or vel?* <sup>13</sup> *iure*.

## 9 B.

## ON THE ASSASSINATION OF MARCELLUS.

94. On the 23d of May, landing<sup>1</sup> at the Piraeus from Epidaurus I met our old colleague Marcellus there, and spent<sup>2</sup> that day in the place to be with him. Two days afterwards, when I had in mind to start from Athens, about three o'clock in the morning<sup>3</sup> P. Postumius, a friend of his, came to me and brought me word that Marcellus had been stabbed after dinner time by P. Magius, his friend, with a dagger, and had received two wounds, one in the throat, the other on the head just<sup>4</sup> by the ear—still he hoped that he might possibly<sup>5</sup> live; Magius<sup>6</sup> had killed himself afterwards; he himself had been sent by Marcellus to bring the news<sup>7</sup> and ask that I would summon<sup>8</sup> physicians. I did<sup>9</sup> so, and started at once for the place at the break of day. When I was only a short distance from the Piraeus I<sup>10</sup> met a servant of Acidinus coming with a note in which it was stated<sup>11</sup> that a little before daybreak Marcellus had breathed<sup>12</sup> his last. So one<sup>13</sup> of the noblest of men has fallen a victim<sup>14</sup> to a most untimely<sup>15</sup> death at the hands of a miserable scoundrel; and one whom his very enemies had spared on account of his character<sup>16</sup> has received his death-blow from a friend.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *navi advehi*; the meeting took place after landing, of course.  
<sup>2</sup> *consumere*. <sup>3</sup> = 'the tenth hour of the night.' <sup>4</sup> *secundum*. <sup>5</sup> Use *posse*. <sup>6</sup> The O. O. continues. <sup>7</sup> = 'to announce these things.' <sup>8</sup> *cogere*.  
<sup>9</sup> The Roman did not use *facere* to the extent that English does, and so in cases like this the word was repeated or a different turn given.  
<sup>10</sup> Reverse the subject. <sup>11</sup> = 'written.' <sup>12</sup> Use an appropriate Latin phrase. <sup>13</sup> No partition. <sup>14</sup> = 'visited with (*afficere*) death.' <sup>15</sup> And so *bitter*. <sup>16</sup> *dignitas*. <sup>17</sup> = 'to one whom . . . a friend has been found to deal the death-blow (*mortem offerre*).'



## 9 C.

## HOW METELLUS GOT POSSESSION OF CONTREBIA.

95. When Quintus Metellus, in the capacity<sup>1</sup> of proconsul, was conducting the war in Spain against the Celtiberians, and found<sup>2</sup> that he could not carry<sup>3</sup> the city of Contrebia, the capital of the tribe, by direct assault,<sup>3</sup> after serious and protracted schemings,<sup>4</sup> which he kept to himself,<sup>4</sup> he found a way of bringing his purpose to a successful<sup>5</sup> issue. He showed great activity<sup>6</sup> in marching about, struck out for one section after another, occupied these mountains here,<sup>7</sup> and then after a while crossed those mountains there,<sup>7</sup> whilst in the meantime the reason for his unexpected and sudden shifting<sup>8</sup> was unknown to his own men as well as to the enemy himself. In fact, when asked by a very close friend why he conducted his military operations<sup>9</sup> after such a scattering and uncertain fashion: "Cease," he said, "to press your question,<sup>10</sup> for if I find that my shirt knows this plan of mine, I shall order it burned at once." Then after he had got<sup>11</sup> his own army immeshed<sup>11</sup> in ignorance and the Celtiberians in bewilderment, he marched off in another direction, and<sup>12</sup> suddenly hied back to Contrebia and came down on the city all unsuspecting and paralysed<sup>13</sup> with astonishment.<sup>13</sup> So you see if he had not forced himself to rake<sup>14</sup> up a lot<sup>15</sup> of stratagems he would have had to lie<sup>16</sup> in arms before the walls of Contrebia to extreme old age.

<sup>1</sup> English fulness of expression; use technical Latin form. <sup>2</sup> How is the 'observer' often expressed? 233, N. 1. <sup>3</sup> *viribus* (or *vi*) *expugnare*. <sup>4</sup> = 'plans having been weighed (*agitare*) largely (*multum*) and long within his own breast.' <sup>5</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>6</sup> As Latin avoids abstracts we may render: 'he entered upon journeys (*iter*) with great energy'; remember that a course of activity is being *described* in what follows. <sup>7</sup> Included in the correlatives. <sup>8</sup> *fluctuatio*. <sup>9</sup> = 'pursued so scattered (*sparsum*) and uncertain a kind of military operations.' <sup>10</sup> English form; simplify. <sup>11</sup> *implicare* <sup>12</sup> Subordinate one clause. <sup>13</sup> *attonitus*. <sup>14</sup> *scrutari*. <sup>15</sup> Simplify. <sup>16</sup> The Roman says: 'sit.'

## 9 D.

THE SILLY PERFORMANCES<sup>1</sup> OF CLAUDIUS.

96. Claudius gave many magnificent<sup>2</sup> shows, not only those that were usual and in the accustomed places, but also others that were pure inventions<sup>3</sup> and revived from ancient times<sup>4</sup> and in places where no one before him had given them. He also celebrated the secular games, making out<sup>5</sup> that they had been anticipated by Augustus, and not kept back for the proper time; although in his own history he tells us that after a long intermission<sup>6</sup> Augustus had made a most careful calculation<sup>7</sup> of the years and<sup>8</sup> reduced the games to their proper<sup>9</sup> order. On this account the language of the herald was laughed at when he invited the people in the usual<sup>10</sup> manner to games “which no one had ever seen or ever would see,” as some still survived who had been spectators,<sup>11</sup> and certain of the actors who had been brought out before were then brought out again. He also exhibited in the Campus Martius the storm and sack of a town as<sup>12</sup> a picture of war,<sup>13</sup> and the surrender of the kings of Britain, and presided in his military costume.<sup>14</sup> And<sup>15</sup> when he was about to draw off the water of the Fucine lake, he held a sea-fight beforehand. In this spectacle two fleets, a Sicilian and a Rhodian, met in battle, each made up of twelve triremes.

<sup>1</sup> See again 204, N. 5. <sup>2</sup> Remember 481. <sup>3</sup> *commentitius*. <sup>4</sup> *antiquitas*. <sup>5</sup> *quasi*, but not followed by a clause. <sup>6</sup> Avoid the abstract. <sup>7</sup> Use *rationem subducere*. <sup>8</sup> Single clause. <sup>9</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>10</sup> I.e. the manner usual in public ceremonies. <sup>11</sup> Not *spectatorem esse*, which would mean what? <sup>12</sup> *ad*. <sup>13</sup> = ‘a warlike image.’ <sup>14</sup> A technical term, *paludatus*. <sup>15</sup> *quin*; why?

## 10 A.

## ON JUNIUS ARISTUS.

97. The death of Junius Aristus has caused<sup>1</sup> me the most poignant grief. He had such affection,<sup>2</sup> such regard<sup>2</sup> for me that he took me for the moulder of his character, and as it were his master. This is very rarely the case with the young men of our day.<sup>3</sup> How few there are who yield on the ground of<sup>4</sup> their being younger to the age or, if you choose,<sup>5</sup> the authority of another! They think<sup>6</sup> they are sages<sup>7</sup> at once. They know it all, at once. They look to no one, they imitate no one, they are patterns to themselves. Not so Aristus, whose special wisdom lay<sup>8</sup> in wishing to learn. He always took counsel of me about his studies or about his conduct.<sup>9</sup> He always withdrew with the impression<sup>10</sup> that he had been bettered, and he was bettered, either by what he had heard or by the mere<sup>11</sup> asking. With what energy, with what deference he had served<sup>12</sup> as quaestor to his consul, as<sup>13</sup> pleasing and agreeable a man as he was useful! What activity, what vigilance he showed<sup>14</sup> in his candidacy for the aedileship, from which he was snatched untimely! His unavailing labors are before<sup>15</sup> my eyes, his fruitless canvass and the honor which he succeeded only in deserving.<sup>16</sup> He had an aged father, he had a wife to whom he had been married but a year, a daughter recently born,<sup>17</sup> so many hopes upset<sup>18</sup> in one day. I can't think, I can't talk of anything else.

<sup>1</sup> *afficere*. <sup>2</sup> Use verbs. <sup>3</sup> *noster*. <sup>4</sup> *ut*. <sup>5</sup> 494, 2. <sup>6</sup> Omit. <sup>7</sup> Use *sapere*. <sup>8</sup> *esse*. <sup>9</sup> = 'the duties of life.' <sup>10</sup> *ut*. <sup>11</sup> Use *omnino* and translate '(by the fact) that he had asked.' <sup>12</sup> *esse*. <sup>13</sup> 700. <sup>14</sup> = 'with what activity,' etc., 'he sought.' <sup>15</sup> *obversari*. <sup>16</sup> = 'which he deserved only.' <sup>17</sup> Use *tollere*. <sup>18</sup> *in adversa convertere*.

## 10 B.

## WITH A MAN OF HONOR OATHS ARE UNNECESSARY.

98. In my boyhood<sup>1</sup> I heard from my father the following anecdote<sup>2</sup>: that when Q. Metellus, the son of Lucius, was defending himself against a charge of extortion,<sup>3</sup> that great<sup>4</sup> man, to whom the weal of his country was sweeter than the sight of her, who preferred to depart from the state rather than from his principles<sup>5</sup>; well,<sup>6</sup> when he was pleading the case, and his own accounts were passed round for the sake of examining the entry,<sup>7</sup> there was no one of the jury—all Roman knights<sup>8</sup> and men of character and weight—but looked away<sup>9</sup> and turned his back,<sup>10</sup> lest it might seem that any doubted whether what he had entered on the public account-book was true or false. And at Athens, they say, when a certain man who had lived an unblemished and dignified life gave<sup>11</sup> his testimony publicly, and approached the altars for the purpose of taking the oath<sup>12</sup> as is the fashion of the Greeks, all the judges with one voice shouted their protest<sup>13</sup> against his swearing. From which it is evident that both Greeks and Romans were unwilling that the word of a man of tried worth<sup>14</sup> should be guaranteed by the obligation<sup>15</sup> of an oath. Shall we then examine Pompey's decree and compare it with the laws and weigh every detail<sup>16</sup> with the most crabbed<sup>17</sup> care?

<sup>1</sup> See 325, R. 6. <sup>2</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>3</sup> A technical phrase, *de pecuniis repetundis*. <sup>4</sup> Not *magnus homo*. <sup>5</sup> = 'opinion.' <sup>6</sup> *igitur*. <sup>7</sup> = 'name.' <sup>8</sup> = 'there was no juryman out of those Roman knights, most serious men.' <sup>9</sup> = 'remove his eyes.' <sup>10</sup> Vary in Latin by using *se*. <sup>11</sup> *dicere*. <sup>12</sup> Verb for phrase. <sup>13</sup> = 'that he should not swear.' <sup>14</sup> *spectatus*. <sup>15</sup> *religio*. <sup>16</sup> 'Detail' is an English addition. <sup>17</sup> *acerbus*.



## 10 C.

## THE CONSUL'S ALARMIST SPEECH.

99. Frightened out of his senses,<sup>1</sup> he darted from the senate with his spirits and countenance as much<sup>2</sup> ruffled as if he had stumbled upon a conference of his creditors. He called an assembly of the people<sup>3</sup> and, consul as he was,<sup>4</sup> held such a speech as Catiline would never have held had he been successful,<sup>5</sup> in which he said that people were mistaken if they thought that the senate had still any considerable<sup>6</sup> power<sup>7</sup> in the state; and that as for<sup>8</sup> the Roman knights, they should pay for the day on which they met, armed with swords, on the Capitoline hill; that the time had come for those who had been cowed<sup>9</sup> by fear (he meant, forsooth, the conspirators) to avenge themselves. If he had only said this he would be deserving of all punishment, for a mischievous speech of a consul may of itself<sup>10</sup> shake the foundations of the state; but just see what he did: Lucius Lamia, who loved me dearly for<sup>11</sup> the great intimacy which existed<sup>12</sup> between<sup>13</sup> his father and myself, and who was eager to court<sup>14</sup> even death for the state, he relegated in the assembly of the people, and published an edict<sup>15</sup> that he should keep<sup>16</sup> 200 miles from the city, because he had dared to plead for a citizen, for a well-deserving citizen, for a friend, for the state.

<sup>1</sup> Use one verb. <sup>2</sup> *non minus*. <sup>3</sup> Technical word. <sup>4</sup> 'As he was' is an English addition. <sup>5</sup> *victor*; a parallel construction to 'consul as he was.' <sup>6</sup> 315, N. 1. <sup>7</sup> Verb. <sup>8</sup> *vero*. <sup>9</sup> = 'had been in fear.' <sup>10</sup> *ipse*. <sup>11</sup> *pro*. <sup>12</sup> *esse*. <sup>13</sup> The Roman usually emphasizes one side in the Latin (by the Dative) and adds the other by *cum* and the Ablative; so in phrases such as 'war between,' etc. <sup>14</sup> *oppetere*. <sup>15</sup> Simple verb. <sup>16</sup> *abesse*.

## 10 D.

## TWO LEGACY-HUNTERS.

**100.** It does not make much difference with <sup>1</sup> which story I begin. Blaesus, that rich ex-consul, was hard pressed <sup>2</sup> by his last illness ; he was desirous of changing <sup>3</sup> his will. Regulus, hoping to get <sup>4</sup> something from a new will, because he had but recently begun to court <sup>5</sup> his favor, began to exhort the physicians and to beg them by all <sup>6</sup> means to keep the poor man's breath in his body.<sup>7</sup> After the will was sealed he changed his rôle, altered his style-of-address, and said to the same physicians : "How long do you intend to torment the poor creature ? Why do you begrudge him an easy death as <sup>8</sup> you cannot give him life ?" Well,<sup>9</sup> Blaesus died, and as if he had heard everything he did not leave Regulus so much as a penny.<sup>10</sup> Here's another <sup>11</sup> story for you ! Aurelia, a fashionable <sup>12</sup> woman, had put on her handsomest dress when she was about to sign her will. When he came to sign, said Blaesus : "I want you to leave me this." Aurelia thought the man was jesting, but he persisted in dead earnest <sup>13</sup> ; in short,<sup>14</sup> he actually forced the woman to open the tablets and leave him the dress she had on ; and he watched as she wrote and looked in to see <sup>15</sup> whether she had written it.

<sup>1</sup> The Roman begins *from*. <sup>2</sup> *conflictare*. <sup>3</sup> Avoid the Gerund(ive).  
<sup>4</sup> 'To get' is involved in the verb 'hoping.' <sup>5</sup> 'Court his favor,' *captare*. <sup>6</sup> = 'every means whatsoever.' <sup>7</sup> = 'to prolong the breath for the creature' ; 'poor' is involved in the word. <sup>8</sup> Relative. <sup>9</sup> Unnecessary.  
<sup>10</sup> An English phrase. <sup>11</sup> Only two stories are told. <sup>12</sup> *ornatus*. <sup>13</sup> Seriously. <sup>14</sup> = 'not (to say) many things.' <sup>15</sup> Involved in 'looked in.'

## 11 A.

## THE KING IS ASSASSINATED.

101. The conspirators took possession of an unoccupied house, commanding<sup>1</sup> a narrow street by which the king used to go down to the market-place. There all<sup>2</sup> stood drawn up and armed, awaiting his passing, except one<sup>2</sup> whose name was Dinomenes, who, because he was a member of the body-guard,<sup>3</sup> had the following part assigned to him: namely, that when the king approached the door of the house, under color of<sup>4</sup> some excuse he should detain the procession from the rear. And all was done as had been agreed upon. Dinomenes raised his foot, and<sup>5</sup> by pretending<sup>6</sup> to release it from a tight<sup>7</sup> knot he delayed the crowd and in this way made such<sup>8</sup> a gap that when the king was assailed as he passed by without armed attendants, he was stabbed<sup>9</sup> in several places before help could come. The attendants took to flight when they saw the king lying dead.<sup>10</sup> The assassins proceeded, a part to the forum, where they found<sup>11</sup> the multitude overjoyed at their freedom, a part to Syracuse, to forestall the plans of Andranodorus and the other royal ministers.<sup>12</sup> In this uncertain condition of affairs, Appius Claudius, seeing a war impending<sup>13</sup> close at hand, informed the senate by letter that the Carthaginians and Hannibal were trying<sup>14</sup> to win over Sicily. He himself, to check<sup>15</sup> the plans of the Syracusans, concentrated<sup>16</sup> all his garrisons on the frontier.

<sup>1</sup> *imminere*. <sup>2</sup> The principal figure in this sentence being Dinomenes, make the principal clause concern him, using *ceteri*. <sup>3</sup> = 'a guard of the body.' <sup>4</sup> *per*. <sup>5</sup> Avoid. <sup>6</sup> *tamquam*. <sup>7</sup> *strictus*. <sup>8</sup> Not *talis*. <sup>9</sup> = 'he was pierced with several wounds.' <sup>10</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>11</sup> 'Where they found' is implied in simple *ad*. <sup>12</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>13</sup> *oriens*. <sup>14</sup> Involved in the tense. <sup>15</sup> *adversus*. <sup>16</sup> *convertere*.

## 11 B.

## MARCELLUS IS DISAPPOINTED.

102. The consul ordered Nero to follow the enemy's line of march, and when he saw that the battle was begun, to attack<sup>1</sup> him in the rear. Whether he was unable to carry out this order<sup>2</sup> because<sup>3</sup> he missed the road or because<sup>3</sup> the time was scanty is uncertain; but he was not on hand<sup>4</sup> when the battle was joined, and<sup>5</sup> while the Romans, it is true, had decidedly<sup>6</sup> the advantage, still because the cavalry did not come up<sup>7</sup> at the right time the plan of the engagement as agreed upon was marred. Marcellus did not venture to follow up the retiring enemy, and<sup>8</sup> gave his men though<sup>9</sup> victorious the signal for falling back. Nevertheless it is said that more than two thousand of the enemy were killed on that day, while<sup>10</sup> the Romans lost less than four hundred. About sunset Nero returned, with horses and men wearied by a useless march of a day and a night,<sup>11</sup> without<sup>12</sup> even getting a sight of the enemy, and was severely reprimanded by the consul, who went so far as to say that it was his fault<sup>13</sup> that the disaster suffered at Cannae was not repaid to the enemy. On the next day the Romans marched out to battle, while the Carthaginians kept within their camp, thus silently confessing defeat.<sup>14</sup> In the dead of night of the third day, giving up the hope of getting possession of Nola, Hannibal started for Tarentum, where he saw a better prospect<sup>15</sup> of having the place betrayed to him.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *se obicere*. <sup>2</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>3</sup> Use Ablatives. <sup>4</sup> *abesse*. <sup>5</sup> Omit. <sup>6</sup> *haud dubie*. <sup>7</sup> *adesse*. <sup>8</sup> Omit. <sup>9</sup> Implied in the signal given; see the following note. <sup>10</sup> The opposition is sufficiently expressed by juxtaposition. <sup>11</sup> = 'fatigued in vain for a day and a night.' <sup>12</sup> Ablative Absolute. <sup>13</sup> *per aliquem stare*. <sup>14</sup> = 'by silent confession, conquered.' <sup>15</sup> = 'to a more certain hope of betrayal.'



## 11 C.

## PHILIP'S ADDRESS TO THE ROMANS.

103. In reply Philip said : “ My quarrel now is not with the Maronites or with Eumenes, but with you, Romans; for it is from you that, as I have long <sup>1</sup> perceived, I get no justice. That the cities of Macedonia which had revolted from me during a suspension-of-hostilities <sup>2</sup> should be restored to me I thought but <sup>3</sup> fair, not because that would be a great accession to my dominion, for they are small towns and situated on my extreme frontiers, but because the example was of great importance <sup>4</sup> towards keeping the rest of the Macedonians to their allegiance.<sup>5</sup> This was refused me. In the Aetolian war I was ordered by the consul M.’ Acilius to lay siege to Lamia, and after I had undergone a long, fatiguing service in constructing works and fighting,<sup>6</sup> while<sup>7</sup> in the act of passing over the walls the consul recalled me from the city which was almost captured, and obliged me to withdraw my forces thence. As<sup>8</sup> a consolation for this piece of injustice I received permission <sup>9</sup> to recover beggarly forts, for so they are <sup>10</sup> to be called rather than cities, in Thessaly, Perrhaebia and Athamania. Of these also you deprived me a few days ago. In what category do you wish to place me ? that is the question.<sup>11</sup> Am I a deadly enemy or am I a friendly allied <sup>12</sup> king ? ”

<sup>1</sup> Remember 230. <sup>2</sup> *indutiae*. <sup>3</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>4</sup> *multum pertinere*. <sup>5</sup> ‘To their allegiance’ is implied in *continere* <sup>6</sup> = ‘long fatigued by works and battles.’ <sup>7</sup> Participle. <sup>8</sup> *ad*. <sup>9</sup> Express by the passive. <sup>10</sup> The fulness of the English expression is to be avoided thus : ‘Perrhaebia and Athamania, beggarly forts rather than cities’ ; ‘beggarly’ is implied in *castellum*, the diminutive. <sup>11</sup> *refert*. <sup>12</sup> Observe that the Roman cannot construe two similar adjectives with one substantive without a connective ; hence = ‘an ally and a friendly king. The same remark holds good for ‘deadly enemy.’

## 11 D.

## HIERONYMUS DISMISSES THE ROMAN AMBASSADORS.

104. The praetor Appius Claudius, whose province Sicily was, on <sup>1</sup> hearing this at once sent envoys to Hieronymus. The envoys said that they came to renew the alliance which had existed <sup>2</sup> with his grandfather, but they were heard and dismissed with ridicule <sup>3</sup> by Hieronymus, who asked them sneeringly how they had fared <sup>4</sup> in the battle at Cannae, for what <sup>5</sup> the ambassadors of Hannibal told him was scarcely credible; he wished to know what was the truth, in order to determine thereby which of the two sides <sup>6</sup> to follow. The Romans, saying that they would return to him when he began to listen seriously to embassies sent him, after warning him rather than begging him not to break <sup>7</sup> faith with them lightly, <sup>8</sup> took their departure. Hieronymus now sent an embassy <sup>9</sup> to Carthage to conclude a treaty on the basis <sup>10</sup> of his alliance with Hannibal. It was stipulated that when they had expelled the Romans from Sicily, the river Himera, which about divides the island, should be the boundary line between the kingdom of Syracuse and the Punic empire. Later, he sent a second embassy, in which he urged <sup>11</sup> that it was fair that all Sicily should be yielded <sup>12</sup> to him, while the people of Carthage should claim <sup>13</sup> the rule over Italy as its own. <sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use the conjunction *ubi*. <sup>2</sup> = 'been.' <sup>3</sup> *per ludibrium*. <sup>4</sup> = 'what their fortune had been.' <sup>5</sup> Avoid the relative. <sup>6</sup> Use *spes*. <sup>7</sup> Do not use a subordinate clause; *mutare*. <sup>8</sup> *temere*. <sup>9</sup> The Roman avoids the abstract as a rule; but not always. <sup>10</sup> *ex*. <sup>11</sup> *censere*. <sup>12</sup> Both should be in the same construction; study the construction with *cedere*. <sup>13</sup> *quaerere*; use the passive construction. <sup>14</sup> *proprius*.

## 12 A.

## A FAMILIAR NOTE.

105. I should scarcely have ventured to ask of you to write me in Latin, for I feared that it would seem too difficult to you, and on this account the Latin<sup>1</sup> letter I received from you lately was all the more welcome. True,<sup>2</sup> it was not absolutely<sup>3</sup> faultless, but much neater and much more polished than I should have believed. So I bid you be hopeful and entertain no doubt<sup>4</sup> that some day or other under my guidance<sup>5</sup> you will attain a considerable command of this line of work<sup>6</sup> also. How welcome and delightful your coming here would have been to me, it is utterly<sup>7</sup> unnecessary to assure you. For I imagine you know well enough the greatness of my affection for you. But I see so many young men who have come to Rome fall ill that I have been afraid that at this season of the year a change of climate might be a risk<sup>8</sup> to you. I hope that before the 24th of August the hot spell<sup>9</sup> will abate somewhat. At that time, God willing, I will take a trip<sup>10</sup> to your town, for<sup>11</sup> I am eager to see you, and will have you sent for at once. I have not at hand your letter before the last<sup>12</sup> in which you ask me some questions<sup>13</sup> about civil law; but you can easily relieve yourself of the bother of the whole investigation. Good bye, and bear me in affectionate remembrance.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Latine scriptus*; incorporate according to 616. <sup>2</sup> *quidem*. <sup>3</sup> *omni ex parte*. <sup>4</sup> English fulness. <sup>5</sup> Ablative Absolute (*dux*). <sup>6</sup> 'Line of work,' *genus*. <sup>7</sup> *nihil necesse est*. <sup>8</sup> *periculum afferre*. <sup>9</sup> Expressed in Latin by the Plural of the abstract; 204, N. 6. <sup>10</sup> *excurrere*. <sup>11</sup> Not a separate clause. <sup>12</sup> 'Before the last,' *superior*. <sup>13</sup> Use verb only. <sup>14</sup> English fulness; Latin deems *amare* sufficient.

## 12 B.

## ON TRUE HOSPITALITY.

106. It would be a long story to explain in detail,<sup>1</sup> nor does it matter how I happened to be dining at the house of a man who seemed to himself to be elegant and economical, but to me at once mean and extravagant. For he set before himself and a few others rich dishes, before the rest cheap viands, and in small quantities.<sup>2</sup> And so too with<sup>3</sup> the wine, which he had put in small decanters, and had divided<sup>4</sup> it into three kinds, not to give the privilege<sup>5</sup> of choosing but to prevent the right of refusing: one kind for us and for himself, another for his second-class<sup>6</sup> friends, for he classifies his friends,<sup>7</sup> yet<sup>8</sup> another for his freedmen and ours. My next neighbor<sup>9</sup> at dinner perceived this, and asked me whether<sup>10</sup> I approved of it. I said no. "What plan<sup>11</sup> do you follow, then?" said he. "I put the same things before all." "Your freedmen too?" "Yes!<sup>12</sup> for then I consider them guests, not freedmen." "Then," said he, "it must cost you a round sum<sup>13</sup>?" "By no means." "How is that possible?" "Very easily,<sup>14</sup> because, you must know,<sup>15</sup> my freedmen do not drink the same wine that I drink, but I drink the same that my freedmen drink." And really, if you restrain your appetite, it is not a burdensome thing to share with a number what you use yourself.

<sup>1</sup> *altius repetere*. <sup>2</sup> Adjective. <sup>3</sup> Omit the relative 'which,' and make *vinum* the object of 'divided.' <sup>4</sup> *describere*. <sup>5</sup> I.e. 'power.' <sup>6</sup> *minor*. <sup>7</sup> = 'he has his friends in grades (*gradatim*).'<sup>8</sup> Adds to the smoothness of the English, but is unnecessary in the Latin. <sup>9</sup> Relative clause; remember too that the Romans reclined at table. <sup>10</sup> Would *an* be allowable? <sup>11</sup> I.e. 'habit.' <sup>12</sup> See 471, (a) 1. <sup>13</sup> *magnus*. <sup>14</sup> Omit and begin with 'because.' <sup>15</sup> = 'of course.'



## 12 C.

## ON BEARING MISFORTUNES BRAVELY.

107. Miltiades, Aristides, and Themistocles were unjustly condemned and banished by their fellow-citizens, but <sup>1</sup> nevertheless because they deserved well of their state are now of such renown not only in Greece but also among us that no one mentions those by whom they were crushed. Which of the Carthaginians was of more value than Hannibal for <sup>2</sup> wisdom, for bravery, for achievements, who for so many years contended single-handed <sup>3</sup> with so many of our generals for <sup>4</sup> empire and glory? Yet he <sup>5</sup> was exiled by his own fellow-citizens; we <sup>5</sup> see that, even though <sup>6</sup> an enemy, he has been celebrated in our literature and by our memory. Wherefore let us love our country, obey the senate, consult the interests of the conservatives.<sup>7</sup> Let us neglect present results <sup>8</sup>; let us devote ourselves <sup>9</sup> to the glory of coming time <sup>10</sup>; let us deem that to be best which is most upright; let us hope for what we wish, but let us bear what happens <sup>11</sup>; finally let us reflect that the bodies of heroes <sup>12</sup> are mortal, but that the glory of their valor is everlasting; and let us believe that those who have by their counsels or labors either enlarged or defended or preserved this great state have obtained immortal glory.

<sup>1</sup> Subordinate the first clause. <sup>2</sup> Respect. <sup>3</sup> *unus*. <sup>4</sup> *de*; do not use *contendere*. <sup>5</sup> Do not lose sight of the contrast. <sup>6</sup> The use of a particle like *quamquam* with a form other than a verb is not found in model prose; the opposition is implied. <sup>7</sup> *bonus*. <sup>8</sup> *fructus*. <sup>9</sup> 'Serve.' <sup>10</sup> = 'posterity.' <sup>11</sup> Watch the tense. <sup>12</sup> *Vir* of itself is sufficient; but *homo fortis magnusque* is more rotund; why would *magnus* be right here?

## 12 D.

## A LETTER OF RECOMMENDATION.

108. I did not promise Apollonius, who will<sup>1</sup> bring you this letter, a recommendation, not that<sup>2</sup> I supposed that it would not have weight<sup>3</sup> with you, but it seemed to me that he needed no recommendation as he had served with you, and in case he wished to make use of recommendations I saw that he could accomplish his purpose<sup>4</sup> just as well by means of other people. A word-in-evidence<sup>5</sup> of my opinion of him I am<sup>1</sup> very willing to give, both because he set great store<sup>6</sup> by it and because I have found out by actual trial<sup>7</sup> that my word really has weight with you. What I know of him then is that he is<sup>8</sup> a cultivated man and given to higher<sup>9</sup> studies from his very boyhood, for while he was yet a boy<sup>10</sup> he was much<sup>11</sup> at my house with Diodorus the Stoic, a profoundly learned man, if<sup>12</sup> I am any judge. Now in his enthusiasm<sup>13</sup> for your achievements he is fired with the ambition<sup>14</sup> of putting them on record in Greek. That he can do it, I believe. He has decided talent<sup>15</sup>; he has had practice; he has long been conversant with literary pursuits<sup>16</sup> of this kind.<sup>17</sup> He is intensely eager to do justice<sup>18</sup> to the immortal fame your deeds have won.<sup>19</sup> Here you have a statement<sup>5</sup> of my opinion, but you with<sup>20</sup> your unequalled insight will be far better able to come to a decision.

<sup>1</sup> See 252. <sup>2</sup> 541, N. 2. <sup>3</sup> *valere*. <sup>4</sup> *id.* <sup>5</sup> *testimonium*. <sup>6</sup> An English phrase. <sup>7</sup> 'To find out by trial' is *experiri*. <sup>8</sup> Condense into 'I know him to be.' <sup>9</sup> *optimus*. <sup>10</sup> = 'from boyhood.' <sup>11</sup> Literally. <sup>12</sup> That is, 'in my judgment.' <sup>13</sup> = 'inspired by zeal.' <sup>14</sup> = 'desires.' <sup>15</sup> = 'he is strong in intellect.' <sup>16</sup> Hendiadys. <sup>17</sup> Reverse the cases. <sup>18</sup> *satisfacere*. <sup>19</sup> Genitive. <sup>20</sup> *pro*.

## 13 A.

## ON THE SEARCH FOR A TUTOR.

109. What commission<sup>1</sup> could you have enjoined upon me more pleasant than to look up a tutor for your brother's children? Thanks to<sup>2</sup> you, I go back to school again; I take up again, as it were, that most delightful time of life. I sit among the lads as I used to do, and I even find out by experiment<sup>3</sup> how much respect<sup>4</sup> I have among them, on account of<sup>5</sup> my studies. For lately, you must know, in a crowded lecture-room the young fellows were debating<sup>6</sup> in a loud tone of voice<sup>7</sup> in the presence of many persons of my own rank; I entered, they hushed. I should not relate this if it did not tend<sup>8</sup> more to their credit than to mine; and if I did not wish you to hope that your brother's sons could be properly trained.<sup>9</sup> As for the rest,<sup>10</sup> when I have heard all the professors,<sup>11</sup> I will write what I think of each one; and I will manage it so that you yourself may seem to have heard them all, so far at least as I can by letter. For I owe this conscientious effort<sup>12</sup> to you; I owe it to the memory of your brother, especially in regard to a matter of such importance.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> English fulness. <sup>2</sup> = 'by your benefit.' <sup>3</sup> I.e. 'find out by experiment,' *experiri*. <sup>4</sup> *auctoritas*. <sup>5</sup> The studies are the source. <sup>6</sup> 'Talking' is sufficient. <sup>7</sup> Adverb. <sup>8</sup> *pertinere*. <sup>9</sup> What is the passive of *docere*? <sup>10</sup> = 'as for what remains.' <sup>11</sup> A relative. <sup>12</sup> Hendiadys: 'fidelity and zeal.' <sup>13</sup> *tantus*.

## 13 B.

## ON THE MURDER OF CICERO.

110. No<sup>1</sup> fouler deed disgraced that period than the proscription of Cicero and the silencing<sup>2</sup> of the voice of a man who through so many years had championed the weal of the state<sup>3</sup> and of the citizens. Nevertheless, thou hast accomplished nothing, Mark Antony, by instigating<sup>4</sup> the murder of Cicero, once the preserver of the republic, of Cicero,<sup>5</sup> the great consul. Thou hast indeed rudely snatched from him a light of day<sup>6</sup> that was full of anxiety,<sup>7</sup> an age that was advanced, and a life that was more wretched under thy dominion<sup>8</sup> than death under thy triumvirate; but so far from<sup>9</sup> taking away the fame and glory of his deeds and sayings, thou hast increased them. He lives, and will live through all the memory of the ages; and while the universe,<sup>10</sup> framed whether by chance or by providence, or by what agency soever, shall remain intact, which he was almost the only Roman to see with his mind's eye,<sup>11</sup> to embrace with his genius, to illumine by his eloquence, it will bear on with it as the companion of its existence<sup>12</sup> the praise of Cicero, and all coming time shall admire his writings<sup>13</sup> against thee, and execrate thy action<sup>13</sup> towards him; and the human race<sup>14</sup> shall sooner pass away from the world than the glory of Cicero from the memory of mankind.

<sup>1</sup> This must be entirely changed thus: 'Nothing was so unworthy of that period as the fact that Cicero was proscribed,' etc. <sup>2</sup> Use *abscondere*, in allusion to the fate of Cicero. <sup>3</sup> The contrast can be heightened by adding *publicus* and *privatus*; but it is not necessary. <sup>4</sup> *irritare*. <sup>5</sup> Replace by simple *que*. <sup>6</sup> Is not *lux* sufficient? <sup>7</sup> *sollicitus*. <sup>8</sup> Use *princeps*. <sup>9</sup> Use *tantum abest ut...ut*, or *adeo...ut*. <sup>10</sup> *rerum naturae corpus*. <sup>11</sup> 'Mind' is enough. <sup>12</sup> *aeuum*. <sup>13</sup> Both are concrete. <sup>14</sup> = 'the race of men.'



## 13 C.

## ON THE ILLNESS OF A FRIEND.

111. I have been hard and fast in town this many a day,<sup>1</sup> and in a frightfully depressed state of mind<sup>2</sup> too. I am<sup>3</sup> sorely troubled by the long and obstinate illness of Titus Aristo, for whom I have a great admiration<sup>4</sup> and regard.<sup>4</sup> For he is the most<sup>5</sup> earnest, the purest, and the most learned of men, so that it seems to me that it is not the life of one man that is in danger,<sup>6</sup> but in the person<sup>7</sup> of one man the life of literature itself and all that is good in mental and moral training.<sup>8</sup> How learned he is in public and private law! What an amount of history,<sup>9</sup> of precedents, of ancient lore<sup>10</sup> he possesses! There is nothing that you could wish to learn that he cannot teach. To me certainly, as often as I look for something that is abstruse, he is a perfect storehouse. Lately he called me and a few of his especial<sup>11</sup> friends to him and begged that we would consult the physicians concerning the upshot<sup>12</sup> of his illness, so that if it were incurable he might of his own accord depart this life; if it were only hard to manage and tedious, that he might hold out and remain. For<sup>13</sup> so much was due to the prayers of his wife and to us his friends, that he should not<sup>14</sup> abandon our hopes, if only they were not vain, by a self-sought<sup>15</sup> death.

<sup>1</sup> = 'I have long been sticking,' etc. <sup>2</sup> English fulness; use a single word. <sup>3</sup> Remember that the Roman prefers active to passive. <sup>4</sup> Verbs are to be employed. <sup>5</sup> A negative expression ('nothing is more earnest,' etc.) is more emphatic. <sup>6</sup> *periculum adire*. <sup>7</sup> English fulness. <sup>8</sup> *omnes bonae artes* is sufficiently close to this whole phrase. <sup>9</sup> *res*. <sup>10</sup> *antiquitas*. <sup>11</sup> Relative clause: 'whom he is particularly fond of.' <sup>12</sup> *summa*. <sup>13</sup> His view. <sup>14</sup> Why not *ut non*? <sup>15</sup> I.e. 'voluntary.'

## 13 D.

## ON THE BEST STYLE.

112. If I am to have my choice, I wish my style to be like the winter snow,<sup>1</sup> as Homer calls it, that is, full and steady and ample, Jove-like<sup>2</sup> and supernal.<sup>3</sup> But, you will say,<sup>4</sup> a brief discourse is far more popular: yes, but only with the indolent, whose easy sloth<sup>5</sup> it is ridiculous to respect as if it were a critical decision.<sup>6</sup> For should you take counsel of<sup>7</sup> these people, it is not only better<sup>8</sup> to speak briefly, but better not to speak at all. This is my opinion as yet, but I will change it if you disagree.<sup>9</sup> But should you disagree with me, pray let me know clearly your reason why.<sup>10</sup> For although I ought to yield to your better judgment,<sup>11</sup> nevertheless I deem it more proper in a matter of so much importance<sup>12</sup> to be overcome by argument<sup>13</sup> rather than by authority. If, then, it seems to you that I am not mistaken, write me so in as brief a letter as you choose; yet write. For you will thus confirm my judgment. If I am mistaken, get up<sup>14</sup> a long, long letter: so that if you agree<sup>9</sup> with me I shall have imposed on you the necessity of a short letter; if you disagree, of a really long one.

<sup>1</sup> Homer uses the Plural; see 204, N. 6. <sup>2</sup> I.e. 'divine.' <sup>3</sup> I.e. 'celestial.' <sup>4</sup> Involved in the conjunction; 488. <sup>5</sup> Hendiadys: 'ease (*deliciae*) and sloth.' <sup>6</sup> One word, *iudicium*. <sup>7</sup> = 'have in council.' <sup>8</sup> Not *melius*. <sup>9</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>10</sup> Latin would be content with, 'but pray explain clearly why you disagree.' <sup>11</sup> *auctoritas*. <sup>12</sup> English fulness. <sup>13</sup> Not *argumentum*; why? <sup>14</sup> *parare*.

## 14 A.

ON THE STATE<sup>1</sup> OF THINGS AT ROME.

113. Although there is such a general confusion<sup>2</sup> that each one feels discontented<sup>3</sup> with his own situation, and there is no one but<sup>4</sup> prefers to be anywhere rather than where he is, nevertheless I do not doubt but that at this time to a Lover of the Good Cause<sup>5</sup> a sojourn<sup>6</sup> at Rome is the saddest conceivable.<sup>7</sup> For although no matter where one is one has the same feeling of bitterness<sup>8</sup> at the utter ruin of the state<sup>9</sup> and of one's self, nevertheless the eyes increase the pain, for what others only hear, they are forced to behold, and do not allow a man to turn his thoughts away from the miseries about him. Therefore, although you must be distressed by the lack of many things, nevertheless deliver yourself<sup>10</sup> from that great grief with which, I hear, you are most tortured, namely,<sup>11</sup> over your not being in Rome. For although it is a sad burden<sup>12</sup> for you to miss your dear ones and your home, nevertheless all that you miss is holding its own,<sup>13</sup> and would not hold it better if you were at hand, and is in no particular danger; and when you think of your home<sup>14</sup> you ought not to claim some especial fortune, nor refuse to bear<sup>15</sup> the common fate.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use *se habere* <sup>2</sup> = 'a confusion of all things.' <sup>3</sup> *paenitere*. <sup>4</sup> Not *sed*; see 632. <sup>5</sup> Merely 'a good man.' <sup>6</sup> = 'it is the saddest (thing) to be at Rome.' <sup>7</sup> Unnecessary. <sup>8</sup> Hendiadys: 'feeling and bitterness.' <sup>9</sup> Contrast *suus* with *publicus*. <sup>10</sup> I.e. 'your mind.' <sup>11</sup> *quod*. <sup>12</sup> = 'a great trouble.' <sup>13</sup> *status suus*. <sup>14</sup> *tua*. <sup>15</sup> Omit. <sup>16</sup> There is no difference between 'fate' and 'fortune,' so 'fate' may be omitted.

## 14 B.

## ON THE LYONS FIRE.

114. Our friend Liberalis is now dejected<sup>1</sup> at the intelligence<sup>2</sup> of a conflagration by which the colony of Lyons has been consumed, a misfortune which might<sup>3</sup> well affect anyone, not to say an ardent<sup>4</sup> patriot. So many beautiful works of art and architecture,<sup>5</sup> any one of which might of itself give distinction<sup>6</sup> to a city, have been laid low in one night,<sup>7</sup> and a great calamity has befallen in profound<sup>8</sup> peace such as is not to be dreaded even in time of war. This event causes him to seek in vain<sup>9</sup> that firmness which he had exercised in view of<sup>10</sup> those things which he used to think were to be feared. But if this unexpected and almost unheard of calamity<sup>11</sup> was not feared, it does not astonish me,<sup>12</sup> since it was unexampled. For many cities have been visited<sup>13</sup> by conflagrations, none destroyed.<sup>13</sup> For even when a hostile band<sup>14</sup> has set fire<sup>15</sup> to houses, it has gone out in many places, and although subsequently revived, nevertheless it rarely devours<sup>16</sup> everything so completely as to leave nothing for the sword. And there has scarcely ever been an earthquake so severe and destructive as to overturn whole towns. In fine, there has never broken out a conflagration of so remorseless<sup>17</sup> a character as to leave nothing for a second conflagration.

<sup>1</sup> *tristis*. <sup>2</sup> Avoid the abstract. <sup>3</sup> *posse*. <sup>4</sup> = 'a man very fond (*amans*) of his country.' <sup>5</sup> 'Works' is enough. <sup>6</sup> *illustrare*. <sup>7</sup> Make 'night' the subject; 'has one night laid low.' <sup>8</sup> *tantus*. <sup>9</sup> I.e. 'miss.' <sup>10</sup> *ad*. <sup>11</sup> *malum*. <sup>12</sup> Reverse the subject. <sup>13</sup> Avoid the passive; use *vexare*. <sup>14</sup> The instrument. <sup>15</sup> *ignem immittere*. <sup>16</sup> *depascere*. <sup>17</sup> *infestus*.



## 14 C.

## EVERY MAN IS IGNORANT OF HIMSELF.

115. There are certain faults which we attribute to places and seasons. And yet those faults are sure<sup>1</sup> to follow us whithersoever we go.<sup>2</sup> You know that Dorippa, my wife's fool, was left<sup>3</sup> as a hereditary burden in my household, for personally<sup>4</sup> I am very stingy<sup>5</sup> in-the-matter-of such freaks. If I ever want to amuse-myself<sup>6</sup> with a fool, I have not far to look.<sup>7</sup> I laugh at myself. Well, this fool suddenly lost her sight.<sup>8</sup> You will hardly believe what<sup>9</sup> I am going to tell you, but it is a true-tale. She does not know that she is blind; and repeatedly asks her attendant to change-her-quarters<sup>10</sup>; she says the house is dark-as-pitch.<sup>11</sup> What we laugh at in her happens to us all; no one perceives that he is avaricious or covetous. Nevertheless the blind seek a guide; we wander without a guide, and say: 'I am not extravagant; a man<sup>12</sup> cannot live otherwise at Rome; it is not my fault<sup>13</sup> that I am irascible, my youth is the cause of it.' Why do we deceive ourselves? Our disease<sup>14</sup> is not from without; it is within us. It has-its-seat<sup>15</sup> in our own vitals, and the reason why<sup>16</sup> we have had such difficulty<sup>17</sup> in attaining to health, is because we do not know that we are sick.

<sup>1</sup> Use the periphrastic. <sup>2</sup> Be careful of the tense. <sup>3</sup> = 'remained.'

<sup>4</sup> Use pronoun. <sup>5</sup> *aversus*; note its construction. <sup>6</sup> Use middle. <sup>7</sup> Use gerundive of *quaerere*. <sup>8</sup> = 'ceased to see.' <sup>9</sup> Avoid the relative.

<sup>10</sup> Use *migrare*. <sup>11</sup> *tenebricosus*. <sup>12</sup> Not *homo* or *vir*. <sup>13</sup> *meum vitium*.

<sup>14</sup> *malum*. <sup>15</sup> *sedere*. <sup>16</sup> = 'on that account (*ideo*)... because.' <sup>17</sup> Use adverb *difficulter*.

## 14 D.

## RIGHT AND WRONG FIXED BY NATURE.

116. The principle-of-right<sup>1</sup> seems to me to have its origin<sup>2</sup> in nature; whence it comes that there is no expiation for crimes against men and sins against the gods.<sup>3</sup> Therefore the guilty pay<sup>4</sup> the penalty for these actions not so much by judicial sentences,<sup>5</sup> which formerly did not exist at all and now do not exist in many cases, and even where they do exist are very often mistaken,<sup>6</sup> but they are driven<sup>7</sup> and hunted down by furies, not with burning torches as we read in the play-books, but by distress of conscience and the torture of guilt. Now if it is punishment and not nature that<sup>8</sup> ought to keep men from wrongdoing, what anxiety, pray, would harass the wicked if the fear of penalties were removed? And yet not one of these men was ever so bold but that he either denied that the deed in question<sup>9</sup> was committed by him, or invented some pretext<sup>10</sup> or other for his just resentment, and sought a defense for his crime from some law of nature. Moreover, if right and wrong<sup>11</sup> are not fixed by nature, those of us who are not moved by a sense of honor to be good men, but by some ultimate advantage,<sup>12</sup> are canny, not good. What, for instance,<sup>13</sup> will a man, who fears nothing but witness and judge, do who catches a weak man alone whom he can despoil of his gold? You see plainly enough, I dare say,<sup>14</sup> what he will do.

<sup>1</sup> *ius*. <sup>2</sup> Use verb. <sup>3</sup> Rhetorical position; 682. <sup>4</sup> *luere*. <sup>5</sup> Simply *iudicium*. <sup>6</sup> *falsus*. <sup>7</sup> Avoid the passive. <sup>8</sup> Avoid the relative. <sup>9</sup> An English addition. <sup>10</sup> *causa*. <sup>11</sup> *ius* covers both conceptions. <sup>12</sup> 'Ultimate advantage,' *utilitas*. <sup>13</sup> *nam*. <sup>14</sup> *credere*.

## 15 A.

## ON THE FUNCTION OF THE MAGISTRACY.

117. The function <sup>1</sup> of the magistracy is to govern <sup>2</sup> and to prescribe what <sup>3</sup> is right and useful and in accord with law. For as laws govern magistrates, so magistrates govern the people; and it can be said with truth that magistracy is a speaking law, law a mute magistracy. Magistrates, therefore, are necessary; for without their foresight and circumspection a state cannot exist, and on their proper organization <sup>4</sup> all the administration of the commonwealth is based.<sup>5</sup> Nor are we to prescribe to them only the proper method <sup>6</sup> of commanding, but also to the citizen the proper method of obeying. For both he who commands well must necessarily<sup>7</sup> have obeyed at some time or other, and he who modestly obeys seems worthy of commanding at some future time.<sup>8</sup> And so both he who obeys should <sup>9</sup> hope that at some time he will command, and he who commands bethink himself that he must shortly obey. But we do not only prescribe that men should follow and obey the magistrates, but also that they should honor and esteem them. For our friend Plato sets down in the class of the Titans those who oppose magistrates, as they opposed the authorities-of-heaven.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *vis*. <sup>2</sup> *praeesse*. <sup>3</sup> Omit the relative. <sup>4</sup> *discriptio*: where the implication is that the substantive is used in a proper application no adjective is needed; so 'organization' means 'proper organization,' and 'method,' 'proper method.' <sup>5</sup> *continere*. <sup>6</sup> *modus*. <sup>7</sup> Not an adverb. <sup>8</sup> I.e. 'at some time or other.' <sup>9</sup> *oportet*. <sup>10</sup> *caelestis*.

## 15 B.

## ON TRUE PRAISE.

118. The praise of a man is not of the age <sup>1</sup> that preceded him and that in which he himself lived : not of his country and parents and ancestors, but of the man himself. It is to be derived <sup>2</sup> from his mind and his body and his extraneous circumstances. <sup>3</sup> The praise of his body, indeed, and his fortunes <sup>4</sup> is not only of less weight, but is not to be treated in a uniform <sup>5</sup> manner. For sometimes we bestow compliments <sup>6</sup> on beauty and strength, as Homer does in the case of Agamemnon and Achilles; sometimes admiration is greatly heightened <sup>7</sup> even by infirmities, <sup>8</sup> as when the same poet says that Tydeus was a little man, but a fighter. Fortune, it is true, lends dignity, as in the case of kings and princes; and then, again, <sup>9</sup> the less the resources the greater the glory that she achieves for noble actions. But all good things that are extraneous to us <sup>10</sup> and that have fallen <sup>11</sup> to men accidentally are praised, not because a man has got <sup>12</sup> them, but because he has used them honorably. For riches and power and popularity, giving as they do <sup>13</sup> a great deal of force for good or evil, <sup>14</sup> constitute the most certain test of character; for we are either better or worse by reason of them. The true praise is always that of the mind.

<sup>1</sup> = 'times,' to be limited by following relatives. <sup>2</sup> *petere*; do not begin a new sentence with it. <sup>3</sup> = '(those things that are) placed outside.'  
<sup>4</sup> Use *fortuita*. <sup>5</sup> *unus*. <sup>6</sup> *honore verborum prosequi*. <sup>7</sup> Avoid passive; 'heighten,' *multum conferre*. <sup>8</sup> Use the Singular of the characteristic.  
<sup>9</sup> Not necessary. <sup>10</sup> *extra nos esse*. <sup>11</sup> 'Happen'; remember the synonyms.  
<sup>12</sup> *habere*. <sup>13</sup> 'As they do' is an English term. <sup>14</sup> *in utramque partem*.



## 15 C.

AS ARE THE LEADERS SO IS THE STATE.

119. It is not so great an evil <sup>1</sup> that the leading men in a state should do wrong, although this is in itself <sup>2</sup> a very great evil, as <sup>3</sup> that many imitators of these leading men spring up. For you may see, if you choose to unroll the annals of the past, <sup>4</sup> that states have always been of the same character <sup>5</sup> as their great men ; whatever that character may have been, and whatever change of morals showed itself in the leading men, the same followed in the people. This is much <sup>6</sup> more true than what our authority Plato thinks, who maintains that a change <sup>7</sup> in the songs of musicians changes the relations of states. Whereas I think that a change in the life and living of the nobility changes the relations of states. Therefore vicious leaders deserve the worst of a state, and not only do harm <sup>8</sup> in that they themselves are corrupted, but also in that they corrupt others and do more mischief <sup>9</sup> by their example than by their sin. And, indeed, the law that I <sup>10</sup> have extended so as to cover a whole class might be narrowed further ; for a few, in fact <sup>11</sup> a very few, who have been advanced to glory <sup>12</sup> and honor, have it in their power <sup>13</sup> to corrupt the morals of a state or to correct them.

<sup>1</sup> As this is a substantivized adjective, it should not be modified by an adjective ; 369. <sup>2</sup> *per se ipsum*. <sup>3</sup> *tantum...quantum*. <sup>4</sup> 'The memory of times.' <sup>5</sup> *talis*. <sup>6</sup> Litotes would make this stronger. <sup>7</sup> Avoid the abstract by means of an Ablative Absolute. <sup>8</sup> *obesse*. <sup>9</sup> *nocere*. <sup>10</sup> = 'that has been extended (*differre*) to cover (*in*).'<sup>11</sup> *atque*. <sup>12</sup> 'Dignified (*amplificare*) with glory.'<sup>13</sup> *posse* is enough.

## 15 D.

## ON THE ORIGIN OF KINGS.

120. In the very earliest <sup>1</sup> times, the first reason for collecting men in cities <sup>2</sup> was that there should be persons to check violence, defend the poorer classes from the injuries of the more powerful, and <sup>3</sup> to give each man what belonged to him. That this was the origin of kings, Herodotus tells us, and Cicero, who <sup>4</sup> borrowed it from him. And so in the olden time kings themselves acted as judges, <sup>5</sup> as, for instance, Minos, whose rare justice made him, according to <sup>6</sup> the ancients, a judge among the dead; as, for instance, Tenes, worshipped among the inhabitants <sup>7</sup> of Tenedos as a god, who, as they say, was wont to patrol the island called after him with an axe with which <sup>8</sup> he was wont to smite those whom <sup>8</sup> he found upon careful examination <sup>9</sup> to have done wrong; as, for instance, Philip of Macedon, who, as we have learned, took <sup>10</sup> patiently his being chidden by a poor <sup>11</sup> old crone to whom he had said that he did not have time <sup>12</sup> to hear her, for she retorted that he ought not to reign if he would not take time <sup>13</sup> to hear and settle legal business. <sup>14</sup> And for a very long time those who had the chief authority among the Hebrews <sup>15</sup> were called not kings, but judges, so that we perceive that there is nothing so characteristic of royalty <sup>16</sup> as the office-of-judge. <sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'Most ancient.' <sup>2</sup> = 'for collecting states'; the city was a state.  
<sup>3</sup> 481, 2. <sup>4</sup> Relative clause would be clumsy. <sup>5</sup> = 'judged.' <sup>6</sup> = 'in the opinion of.' <sup>7</sup> *Tenedius*. <sup>8</sup> Eliminate one of these relatives. <sup>9</sup> *causa discussa*. <sup>10</sup> = 'bear.' <sup>11</sup> Involved in the diminutive. <sup>12</sup> Not *tempus*.  
<sup>13</sup> *vacare*. <sup>14</sup> *causae*. <sup>15</sup> = 'who were in control (*praeesse*) of the people of the Hebrews with the highest authority (*imperium*).'  
<sup>16</sup> Use *regius*. <sup>17</sup> Use verb

# VOCABULARY

*act.*, active; *adj.*, adjective; *adv.*, adverb; *conj.*, conjunction; *intr.*, intransitive; *pass.*, passive; *pron.*, pronoun; *s.*, substantive; *tr.*, transitive; *v.*, verb.

## A

**abandon**, deserere.

**abandoned** (*of character*), perditus.

**abate**, remittere.

**abdicate**, se abdicare.

**abide**, manere, opperiri.

**able, be**, posse.

**abound**, abundare.

**about, de**; (*with numerals*) fere.

**above**, supra; **above all others**, potissimum, vel maxime omnium.

**abroad** (*in foreign lands*), peregre.

**absence**, absentia; **in the absence of**, absens.

**absent**, absens; **be**, abesse.

**absorb**, combibere.

**abstain**, abstinere or se abstinere.

**abstruse**, abditus.

**absurd**, absurdus, insulsus.

**abundance**, abundantia, copia.

**abuse**, (*s.*) maledicta; (*v.*) vituperare.

**accept**, accipere, excipere, recipere.

**acceptable**, acceptus.

**access, have**, aditum patere.

**accession**, accessio.

**accidentally**, forte.

**Accius**, Accius.

**accompany**, comitari.

**accomplice**, conscius, socius.

**accomplish**, conficere, perficere, transigere, efficere; consequi, agere; *not accomplished*, infectus.

**accomplishment** (= *ability*), ars.

**accord, of one's own**, ultro, sua sponte, sua voluntate; **in accord with**, coniunctus cum.

**according to**, secundum.

**account**, ratio; **accounts**, tabulae, tabellae; **render**, rationem reddere; **on account of**, propter; **on this (or that) account**, idcirco, quare.

**account-book**, tabulae.

**accusation**, accusatio.

**accuse**, accusare, insimulare.

**accused**, reus.

**accuser**, accusator.

**accustomed**, solitus; **be**, solere, assuescere, consuescere; **not accustomed**, insuetus.

**Achaean**, Achaeus.

**Achaia**, Achaia.

**achieve**, gerere, parere.

**achievement**, res gesta.

**acknowledge**, agnoscere.

**acquaintance**, notus.

**acquainted, become**, cognoscere.

**acropolis**, arx.

**act**, (*s.*) factum, facinus; (*v.*) agere, facere.

**action**, factum; **bring** (*legal*), agere.

**Actium, of**, Actiacus.

**activity**, discursus.

**actor**, histrio.

**add**, addere, adscribere, afferre.

**address**, (s.) allocutio, oratio; (v.) allo-  
qui.  
**adduce**, affere.  
**adjudge**, adiudicare.  
**adjure**, obsecrare.  
**administration**, moderatio.  
**admirably**, praeclare, divine.  
**admiration**, admiratio.  
**admire**, admirari, mirari.  
**admit**, admittere; (= *confess*) confiteri.  
**adopt**, (*child*) adoptare; (*plan*) ex-  
cipere.  
**advance**, (s.) adventus; (v.) progredi,  
signa proferre, castra proferre.  
**advanced** (*in age*), senilis.  
**advantage**, commodum, utilitas, quae-  
stus; **have the**, superiorem esse.  
**adversity**, res adversae.  
**advice**, consilium.  
**advise**, monere, admonere, praecipere.  
**Aegospotamoi**, Aegos flumen.  
**Aeneid**, Aeneis.  
**Aequians**, Aequi.  
**Aetolians**, Aetoli.  
**affability**, humanitas.  
**affable**, comis; **affably**, comiter.  
**affair**, res.  
**affect**, afficere, movere.  
**affection**, amor, caritas; (*filial*) pietas;  
to have, diligere.  
**affirm**, aio, affirmare.  
**afford**, subministrare.  
**afraid**, be, metuere.  
**Afranius**, of, Afranianus.  
**afresh**, iterum, rursum.  
**Africa**, Africa.  
**African**, Africanus.  
**Africanus**, Africanus.  
**after**, (*prep.*) post; (*conj.*) postquam.  
**afterwards**, post, postea, posthac.  
**again**, iterum.  
**against**, adversus, contra, in.  
**Agamemnon**, Agamemnon.

**age**, aetas, tempus; **great, old**, senec-  
tus; (= *period*) saeculum.  
**aged**, senex, grandis natu.  
**Agesilaus**, Agesilaus.  
**Agis**, Agis.  
**agitated**, trepidans.  
**agree**, assentire, consentire; accedere;  
on, convenire, componere; **it is**  
**agreed**, constat, in confesso est.  
**agreeable**, gratus.  
**agriculture**, agricultura, agrorum-cul-  
tus.  
**aid**, auxilium; **come to the aid of**,  
subvenire.  
**aim at**, petere.  
**alarmist** (*adj.*), trepidus.  
**Albius**, Albius.  
**Alcibiades**, Alcibiades.  
**Alexander**, Alexander.  
**alienate**, alienare.  
**alive**, vivus; **be**, vivere.  
**all**, omnis, universus; **all told**, omnino;  
at all, omnino.  
**Allia**, of, Alliensis.  
**alliance**, societas; **make**, societatem  
pacisci.  
**allied**, socius.  
**Allobroges**, Allobroges.  
**allow**, pati, permittere, sinere; **it is**  
**allowed**, licet.  
**ally**, socius.  
**almost**, fere, paene, prope.  
**alone**, solus, unus.  
**Alps**, Alpes.  
**already**, iam.  
**also**, etiam, quoque.  
**altar**, ara.  
**alter**, mutare, vertere.  
**although**, quamquam, quamvis, cum,  
licet, etc.  
**always**, semper.  
**ambassador**, legatus.  
**Ambiorix**, Ambiorix.



**ambuscade**, insidiae.  
**ambush**, insidiae; **lie in**, subsidere in insidiis.  
**amid**, amidst, inter.  
**among**, apud.  
**amount**, *use* tantus, quantus, etc.  
**ample**, largus.  
**amputate**, amputare.  
**amuse**, delectare.  
**Amyntas**, Amyntas.  
**ancestors**, maiores.  
**anchor**, ancora.  
**ancient**, vetus, antiquus.  
**and**, et, atque, que.  
**anger**, iracundia.  
**angrily**, iracunde.  
**angry**, iratus; **get or be**, irasci; **angry passion**, iracundia.  
**animal**, animal, bestia.  
**annals**, annales.  
**announce**, nuntiare, pronuntiare.  
**annoyance**, molestia.  
**another**, alius, alter; **of**, alienus.  
**answer**, give answer, respondere.  
**anticipate**, anticipare.  
**Antigonus**, Antigonus.  
**Antiochus**, Antiochus.  
**antiquity**, vetustas; *vetus may be used*.  
**Antonius**, Antonius.  
**anxiety**, sollicitudo.  
**any**, ullus; quid, quidquid; quicquam *with gen.*; **anyone**, quis, quisquam; (*interrog.*) *ecquis*; **anywhere**, usquam, ubivis, ubicumque; **at any time**, aliquando.  
**Apelles**, Apelles.  
**Apollo**, Apollo.  
**Apollonius**, Apollonius.  
**appear**, apparere, videri; **it appears**, constat.  
**appearance**, species.  
**appetite**, gula.

**Appius**, Appius.  
**apply**, (e.g. *torch*) admovere; (*care. remedy*) adhibere.  
**appoint**, constituere, praestituere, creare.  
**appreciate**, animo capere.  
**apprehensive**, be, vereri.  
**approach**, (s.) adventus; (v.) accedere, appropinquare.  
**appropriate**, in suam rem convertere.  
**approve**, probare, comprobare.  
**Apronius**, Apronius.  
**Aquitania**, Aquitania.  
**Arabian**, Arabs.  
**Aratus**, Aratus.  
**Arbela**, Arbēla (-orum).  
**Arcanum**, Arcanum.  
**Archimedes**, Archimedes.  
**archon**, archon.  
**Argos**, Argos.  
**argument**, argumentum, ratio.  
**arise**, oriri, cooriri, exoriri.  
**Aristides**, Aristides.  
**Aristotle**, Aristoteles.  
**arm**, (s.) brachium, dextera; (v.) armare.  
**armed**, armati, cum armis.  
**arms**, arma; **take up**, ad arma ire, arma capere.  
**army**, exercitus.  
**around**, circa, circum.  
**arouse**, irritare.  
**arrange**, componere.  
**arrest**, prendere, comprehendere.  
**arrival**, adventus.  
**arrive**, advenire, venire, pervenire.  
**arrow**, sagitta.  
**art**, ars.  
**artifice**, ars, artificium.  
**as**, ut, sicut; pro; cum, proinde ac; *loco with gen.*; **as . . . as**, tam . . . quam; **as much as**, **as highly as** (*with verbs of valuing*), tantus . . . quantus;

as if, quasi, tamquam, *etc.*; as it were, quasi, velut.  
 ascend, ascendere.  
 ascertain, resciscere.  
 ashamed, one is, pudet.  
 Asia, Asia.  
 Asiaticus, Asiaticus.  
 ask, ask for, rogare, interrogare; orare, precari; petere, poscere, quaerere.  
 asleep, fall, obdormiscere.  
 assail, arma inferre, signa inferre, impetum facere; (*with words*) invehi in.  
 assassin, interfector, sicarius.  
 assassinate, interficere, occidere.  
 assassination, caedes, nex.  
 assembly, comitium; of the people, contio.  
 assent, annuere, assentiri.  
 assist, iuvare, adiuvere.  
 assistance, auxilium, subsidium.  
 assume, suscipere.  
 assure, affirmare; assured, certus.  
 astonished, attonitus; be, mirari.  
 at, in, apud; be at stake, agi.  
 Athenian, Atheniensis.  
 Athens, Athenae.  
 Atrius, Atrius.  
 attack, (*s.*) impetus, vis; (*v.*) adoriri, aggredi; consectari, invadere; oppugnare; make, oppugnare.  
 attain, attingere, consequi, pervenire.  
 attempt, conari, temptare, experiri.  
 attend to, gerere, animum advertere.  
 attendant, comes, satelles, paedagogus.  
 attention, cura, curatio; pay, curam adhibere, animum advertere, operam dare.  
 Attica, Attica.  
 Atticus, Atticus.  
 attract, allicere; (*eyes*) convertere.  
 attribute, attribuire, adscribere; often putare.  
 augur, augur.

Ausonius, Ausonius.  
 author, auctor.  
 authority, auctoritas; be, auctorem esse.  
 auxiliary, (*s.*) auxilium; (*adj.*) auxiliaris; auxiliary troops, auxilia.  
 avail, be of, valere.  
 avarice, avaritia.  
 avaricious, avarus.  
 avenge, ulcisci.  
 avenger, ultor.  
 avert, avertere.  
 avoid, vitare, fugere.  
 await, exspectare, opperiri.  
 away, be, abesse.  
 axe, securis.

## B

baby, infans, filiolus, filius, puer.  
 back, tergum.  
 backwards and forwards, ultro citroque.  
 bad, malus, gravis.  
 baggage, impedimenta.  
 bait, esca.  
 baldness, calvitium.  
 Ballio, Ballio.  
 band, societas, familia, manus.  
 bandit, praedo, latro.  
 banish, expellere, in exsilium pellere.  
 barbarian, barbarus.  
 barely, vix; barely escape, vix abesse quin.  
 barren, sterilis.  
 base, turpis.  
 baseness, turpitude.  
 battle, pugna, proelium; (*unfavorable*), clades; join, proelium committere, manum conserere.  
 battle-line, acies.  
 bay, fretum, sinus.  
 be, esse; in, inesse; away, off, abesse; how are you? quid agis?

**bear**, gignere, parere; (= *endure*) ferre, pati, tolerare; (= *carry*) ferre, portare, vehere; trahere; **in mind**, memoria tenere.

**bearer**, *use a relative clause*.

**beast**, bestia; **wild**, ferus, fera.

**beat**, ferire, verberare; (= *surpass*) vincere, antecedere; **be beaten**, vapulare.

**beautiful**, pulcher.

**beauty**, forma, pulchritudo.

**because**, quod, quia, *etc.*

**become**, *use esse*.

**becoming**, decorus; **it is**, decet.

**bed**, lectus; **go to**, ire cubitum.

**befall**, accidere.

**before**, (*prep.*) ante; (*with names of towns*) ad; (*adv.*) antea, prius; (*conj.*) antequam, priusquam; **put before**, praeferre; **year before**, antus prior.

**beg**, orare, petere.

**beget**, gignere.

**begin**, coepisse, incipere; capessere;

**battle**, proelium committere, manum conserere, pugnare coepisse.

**beginning**, initium.

**begone**, abire.

**begudge**, invidere.

**behalf**, on, pro.

**behold**, contemplari, conspiciere, intueri.

**belief**, opinio, fides; **past belief**, incredibilis.

**believe**, credere, fidem habere; **make**, simulare.

**belong**, esse, pertinere; *suus is often used*.

**benefit**, (*s.*) beneficium; (*v.*) prodesse, iuvare.

**beseech**, obsecrare, orare.

**beset**, obsidere, circumvenire.

**besiege**, obsidere, oppugnare.

**best**, optimus.

**Bestia**, Bestia.

**bestow**, dare.

**betake one's self**, se conferre.

**bethink one's self**, cogitare.

**betray**, prodere, indicare.

**betrayal**, proditio.

**better**, (*adj.*) melior; (*adv.*) melius, satius; (*v.*) meliorem facere.

**between**, inter, intra; **space between**, medius *may be used*.

**beware**, cavere, videre.

**bewilderment**, trepidatio, error.

**beyond**, trans; (*with participle*) amplius quam.

**bid**, iubere; (*at a sale*) liceri.

**bind**, vincire; **by oath**, obstringere, inter se sancire.

**bird**, avis.

**Bithynia**, Bithynia.

**bitter**, acer, acerbus; **enemy**, inimicus; **bitterly**, acriter.

**bitterness**, acerbitas.

**blame**, (*s.*) culpatio, vituperatio; (*v.*) culpae, reprehendere, vituperare; **be to**, auctorem esse.

**blessed**, beatus, felix.

**blessing**, bonum.

**blind**, caecus.

**block**, praecludere.

**blood**, sanguis; **drench with**, cruentare.

**bloodshed**, caedes.

**bloom**, florere.

**blot**, (*s.*) labes; (*v.*) out, delere, tollere.

**blow**, (*s.*) ictus, also vulnus; (= *slaughter*) caedes; (*v.*) in, invehere.

**blush**, herubescere.

**boast**, gloriari.

**Bocchus**, Bocchus.

**body**, corpus; (*of men*) manus; **as a body**, in a body, universus.

**bold**, audax, ferox.

**boldness**, audacia.

**bonds**, vincula.  
**book**, liber; **-case**, scrinium, capsula;  
**-keeping**, ratio.  
**booty**, praeda.  
**born**, be, gigni, nasci.  
**borrow**, mutuari.  
**bosom**, sinus.  
**both**, ambo, uterque; **on both sides**,  
 utrimque.  
**bother**, molestia.  
**bough**, ramus.  
**boundary**, finis.  
**boy**, puer.  
**boyhood**, pueritia; **from**, a puero.  
**brave**, fortis.  
**bravery**, fortitudo, virtus.  
**break**, frangere; **into**, irrumpere; **off**,  
 dirimere; **open**, refringere; **through**,  
 perrumpere, interrumpere; **word**,  
 fidem exuere.  
**break of day**, prima lux, lux.  
**breast**, pectus.  
**breath**, spiritus.  
**bribe**, largitio.  
**bridge**, pons.  
**brief**, brevis; **briefly**, breviter.  
**brilliant**, splendidus, luculentus, pul-  
 cher; **brilliantly**, luculente, pul-  
 chre.  
**bring**, ferre, adferre; **about**, efficere;  
**across**, transferre, traducere; **back**,  
 referre; **before** (*a person*), deducere  
 ad; **forth**, producere; **out**, efferre,  
 producere; **up**, adducere; **upon**, im-  
 portare; **an action**, agere.  
**briskly** (*walk*), recte.  
**bronze**, of, aeneus.  
**brother**, frater.  
**Brundisium**, Brundisium.  
**Brutus**, Brutus.  
**build**, aedificare, facere.  
**burden**, onus.  
**burdensome**, onerosus.

**burn**, urere, ardere, cremare; **down**  
 (*intr.*), deflagrare.  
**burst forth**, se eicere, erumpere.  
**bury**, efferre, sepelire.  
**business**, negotium, res.  
**busy**, occupatus.  
**but**, at, sed, nisi, *etc.*; **but in fact**, cete-  
 rum.  
**buy**, emere.  
**by**, a, ab; **way of**, via, per.  
**bystander**, proximus.

## C

Cadiz, Gades.  
 Caecina, Caecina.  
 Caelius, Caelius.  
 Caesar, Caesar.  
 calamity, calamitas.  
 call, appellare, vocare, nominare, dicere;  
 (*council*) advocare; **back**, revocare;  
**forth**, out, evocare, excire; (= *sum-*  
*mon*) advocare, excire.  
 camel, camelus.  
 camp, castra; **standing-**, stativa;  
 pitch, castra ponere.  
 Campanian, Campanus.  
 can, posse; **not**, nequire.  
 Cannae, Cannae; **of**, Cannensis.  
 canny, callidus.  
 canvass, petitio; *also* preces.  
 capable of, be (= *hold*), capere.  
 capital, caput.  
 capitally, insigniter.  
 Capito, Capito.  
 Capitol, Capitolium.  
 Capitoline, Capitolinus.  
 captive, captivus, captus.  
 capture, capere.  
 Capua, Capua.  
 Carbo, Carbo.  
 care, (*s.*) cura; (*v.*) for, curare.  
 careful, diligens, prudens; **be**, curam  
 adhibere, animum advertere.



**carefully**, diligenter, sedulo.

**careless**, be, languere.

**carelessness**, levitas.

**Caria**, Caria.

**carry**, ferre, portare, vehere; **across**, traicere; **back**, revehere; **off**, de-  
portare; **on**, administrare, gerere;  
**out**, exsequi; **up**, evehere.

**Carthage**, Carthago.

**Carthaginian**, Carthaginensis, Poenus.

**case**, causa, res; **be the**, verum esse;  
**in case**, si; **in the case of**, in, de;  
**in any case**, utique; **in many cases**,  
multifariam.

**cash**, pecunia.

**cast**, conicere; **up**, obicere.

**castle**, arx, castellum.

**catch**, capere, deprehendere, nancisci;  
**sight of**, aspicere, conspiciere; **up**,  
excipere.

**category**, numerus.

**Cato**, Cato.

**Catullus**, Catullus.

**cause**, (s.) causa; (v.) facere, efficere;  
(bewilderment) inicere.

**cavalry**, equites, equitatus.

**cease**, cessare, desinere; desistere, absi-  
stere.

**celebrate**, celebrare.

**celestial**, caelestis.

**censor**, censor.

**center**, umbilicus.

**centurion**, centurio.

**Ceres**, Ceres.

**certain** (pron.), quidam, nonnullus.

**certain** (adj.), certus; **be**, certo scire,  
exploratum habere; **know for**, certo  
scire; **get certain news**, certum  
habere.

**certainly**, profecto, certe.

**certainty**, know to a, certum habere.

**Cethegus**, Cethegus.

**Chabrias**, Chabrias.

**Chaeronea**, Chaeronea.

**champion**, (s.) vindex; (v.) defendere,  
vindicare.

**chance**, casus; **by**, casu, forte.

**change**, (s.) mutatio, commutatio; (v.)  
mutare, vertere.

**character**, mores, ingenium et mores.

**Chares**, Chares.

**charge**, (s.) (criminal) crimen; (mili-  
tary) impetus, incursio; **have in**,  
custodiam habere; **let come to**, ad-  
mittere in; (v.) (criminal) insimulare;  
(military) procurrare.

**Charles**, Carolus.

**charming**, lepidus.

**cheap**, vilis, bonus.

**check**, coercere, impedire.

**cherish**, colere.

**chide**, obiurgare.

**child**, puer; **children**, liberi, parvuli.

**choice**, electio.

**choose**, legere, deligere, eligere; creare;  
velle.

**Cicero**, Cicero.

**Cincinnatus**, Cincinnatus.

**Cinna**, Cinna.

**circumspection**, diligentia.

**circumstance**, res; **under certain**  
**circumstances**, aliquando.

**Cirta**, Cirta.

**citadel**, arx.

**citizen**, civis; **fellow-**, civis.

**city**, urbs.

**civil**, civilis; sometimes domesticus.

**civil-faction**, seditio.

**claim**, vindicare, postulare; sometimes  
quaerere.

**class**, genus.

**Claudius**, Claudius.

**clear**, clarus; **clearly**, plane, satis,  
luculenter; **to be clear**, palamesse

**clemency**, clementia.

**cleverly**, argute, acute.

**cleverness**, *astutia*; *often merely ingenuity*.

**climate**, *caelum*.

**Clodius**, *Clodius*.

**close**, *prope, propinquus*; **at hand**, *ex propinquo*.

**cloud**, *nimbus*.

**Clusium, men of**, *Clusini*.

**coast, ora; sea-**, *ora maritima*.

**cohort**, *cohors*.

**colleague**, *collega*.

**collect**, *colligere, congregare, conferre; concurrere, convenire*.

**colony**, *colonia*.

**combine**, *coire, concurrere*.

**come**, *venire, advenire*; **about**, *evenire*; **back**, *redire*; **down on**, *opprimere*; **forth**, *evadere, procedere*; **forward**, *prodire*; **in**, *introire, inire*; **near**, *adire, paulum abesse*; **out**, *exire*; **to consult**, *adire*; **up**, *obviam ire, subire, adesse*; **upon**, *supervenire*; (= *happen*) *fieri*.

**comfort**, *commodum*.

**coming**, *adventus*; **time**, *posteritas*.

**command**, (*s.*) *imperium, facultas*; **be in**, *praeesse*; (*v.*) *imperare, iubere*; *praeesse*.

**commander**, *imperator*.

**commandant**, *praetor, praefectus*.

**commence**, *incipere, coepisse*; *ordiri*.

**commentary**, *commentarius*.

**commission**, *mandatum*.

**commissioner**, *legatus*.

**commit**, *committere, patrare*; **high-way robbery**, *latrocinari*; **sin**, *peccare*.

**common**, *communis*.

**commons**, *plebs*.

**commonwealth**, *civitas, res publica*.

**communicate**, *indicare*.

**community**, *civitas*.

**companion**, *comes*.

**comparable**, *comparandus*.

**compare**, *conferre, comparare*.

**compel**, *cogere*.

**competitor**, *competitor*.

**complain**, *queri, conqueri*.

**complete**, *conficere, perficere*.

**composed**, *compositus*.

**comprehend**, *intellegere, accipere*.

**compulsion**, *necessitas*; **under**, *coactus*.

**comrade**, *commilito, socius*; *often suus*.

**conceal**, *celare*.

**conceive**, *concipere*; (*hope*) *also capere*.

**concern**, (*s.*) *cura*; (*v.*) *pertinere ad, interest, refert*.

**concert with**, *in, cum*.

**conclude**, *efficere*; **treaty**, *foedus facere*.

**conclusion**, *escape, effugere*.

**concubine**, *paelex*.

**condemn**, *damnare, condemnare*.

**condemnation**, *damnatio*.

**condition**, *condicio, status*.

**conduct**, *gerere*; **investigation**, *quaestionem ferre*.

**confer**, *dare*; (= *take counsel*) *colloqui*.

**conference**, *colloquium, conventus*.

**confess**, *fateri, confiteri*.

**confession**, *confessio*.

**confidence**, *fiducia*; **lack**, *diffidere*.

**confident**, *be, confidere*.

**confirm**, *confirmare, sancire*.

**conflagration**, *incendium*.

**conflict**, *pugna*.

**confusion**, *trepidatio, perturbatio*; **wild**, *tumultus*; **throw into**, *turbare*.

**congratulate**, *gratulari*.

**connection**, *necessitudo*; **by marriage**, *also affinitas*.

**Conon**, *Conon*.

**conquer**, *vincere, superare*; (*town*) *capere*.

**conqueror**, victor.  
**conscience**, conscientia.  
**consciousness**, conscientia.  
**conservative**, bonus.  
**consider**, putare, habere, statuere;  
 ponderare, cogitare.  
**considerable**, aliquis *may be used*.  
**consolation**, solacium.  
**console**, consolari.  
**conspiracy**, coniuratio.  
**conspirator**, coniuratus.  
**constable**, viator.  
**constancy**, constantia.  
**constitute**, *use* facere.  
**constitution**, patria instituta.  
**consul**, consul.  
**consular**, consularis; **power**, imperium.  
**consulship**, consulatus.  
**consult**, adire; consulere, consultare.  
**consultation**, hold, consultare.  
**consume**, consumere, absumere; (*by fire*) exurere.  
**contain**, continere.  
**contemn**, contemnere.  
**contemplate**, contemplari, cogitare.  
**contemporary**, aequalis.  
**contemptible**, contemptibilis.  
**contend**, contendere, certare, niti; pugnare, decertare.  
**content**, contentus.  
**contest**, certamen.  
**contrary**, contrarius; **on the**, ex contrario; **to**, contra.  
**controversy**, certamen, controversia.  
**convenience**, commodum.  
**conversant**, be, versari.  
**converse**, colloqui.  
**convey**, perferre.  
**convict**, damnare, convincere.  
**convince**, persuadere; **be convinced**, alicui persuasum esse.  
**convoke**, convocare.

**cook**, coquere.  
**copy**, exemplum.  
**Corcyra**, Corcyra.  
**cordial**, benignus, familiaris; **cordially**, amice.  
**Corinth**, Corinthus.  
**Coriolanus**, Coriolanus.  
**Cornelius**, Cornelius.  
**correct**, corrigere.  
**corrupt**, corrumpere.  
**cost**, constare.  
**Cotta**, Cotta.  
**council**, consilium, concilium.  
**counsel**, consilium; **take**, consultare, consulere, in concilio habere.  
**counselor**, consiliarius.  
**count**, numerare.  
**countenance**, vultus, facies, os.  
**counter**, contra.  
**country**, patria, rus; regio, ager; **-house**, **-seat**, villa.  
**courage**, virtus, animus, animi; **pluck up**, animos tollere.  
**course** (= *plan*), consilium; **of course**, videlicet.  
**court**, in, in iudicio.  
**courtier**, aulicus, purpuratus.  
**cover up**, tegere.  
**covetous**, avarus, cupidus.  
**covetousness**, avaritia.  
**coward**, cowardly, ignavus, fugax.  
**Crassus**, Crassus.  
**crazy**, demens, vecors.  
**create**, creare.  
**creature**, homo.  
**credibility**, fides.  
**credible**, credibilis.  
**credit** (= *praise*), laus.  
**creditor**, creditor.  
**Cretan**, Cretensis, Cres.  
**crime**, scelus, facinus, crimen; **commit**, delinquere.  
**crisis**, tempestas; tempora.



crocodile, crocodilus.  
 crone, anicula.  
 cross, transire, transmittere, trans-  
 gredi.  
 crowd, turba.  
 crowded, frequens.  
 crucify, cruciare.  
 cruel, crudelis.  
 cruelty, crudelitas.  
 crush, frangere, opprimere.  
 cry out, exclamare, conclamare, clami-  
 tare.  
 cultivated, doctus.  
 Cumae, Cumae.  
 cup, poculum.  
 curb, refrenare.  
 curse, execrari, maledicere.  
 curtain, palla.  
 custody, custodia.  
 custom, mos, consuetudo.  
 cut, caedere; **down**, (*men*) caedere, op-  
 primere; (*things*) rescindere; **off**, ab-  
 scidere, auferre, desecare, excidere; in-  
 tercludere, prohibere; **to pieces**,  
 caedere.  
 Cybele, Cybele.  
 Cypselus, Cypselus.

## D

dagger, pugio.  
 daily, cottidie, in dies.  
 Damaratus, Damaratus.  
 danger, periculum.  
 dangerous, periculosus.  
 dare, audere.  
 daring, audacia.  
 darkness, tenebrae.  
 dart out, evolare.  
 dastardly, turpissimus; **dastardly**  
 conduct, ignavia.  
 daughter, filia.  
 dawn, (*s.*) lux; (*v.*) illucere.

**day**, dies; **before yesterday**, nudius-  
 tertius; **every**, cottidie; **three days**,  
 triduum.  
 daylight, lux.  
 dead, mortuus; **the dead**, mortui, inferi;  
 for dead, pro occiso; **dead of night**,  
 silentium noctis.  
 deaf, surdus.  
 dear, carus, duleis; **dearly**, *also* unice.  
 dearth, inopia.  
 death, mors; **meet**, diem obire; **put to**,  
 morte afficere, interficere; **lay death-**  
**penalty**, morte sancire.  
 debauchee, luxuriosus.  
 debauchery, luxuria.  
 decanter, laguncula.  
 deceive, fallere, decipere.  
 decide, discernere, statuere; **be decided**  
 (*of a battle*), inclinari.  
 decision, come to a, iudicare.  
 decisive, ultimus.  
 declare, indicare, declarare, ostendere,  
 testari; (*of war*) indicare.  
 decree, (*s.*) consultum, decretum; **by**,  
 ex decreto; (*v.*) discernere.  
 deed, factum, facinus, res gesta; *some-*  
*times* opera.  
 deem, iudicare, putare, habere, reri,  
 ducere; **right**, videri.  
 defeat, (*s.*) res adversa, proelium adver-  
 sum; (*political*) repulsa; (*v.*) pellere,  
 vincere, superare, expugnare.  
 defection, defectio.  
 defend, arcere, defendere, munire,  
 tueri; (*legal*) *also* causam dicere.  
 defendant, reus.  
 defender, vindex.  
 defense, defensio; **means of**, prae-  
 sidium; **make**, contra dicere.  
 deference, modestia.  
 deformed, distortus.  
 degree, *express by the adverb or adject-*  
*ive.*



**delay**, morari, cunctari; expectare  
**delicate**, tener, tenuis.  
**delightful**, iucundus, dulcis, suavis.  
**deliver**, tradere; (= *free*) liberare.  
**Delphi**, Delphi.  
**demand**, flagitare, poscere, postulare, petere.  
**Democritus**, Democritus.  
**dense**, densus.  
**deny**, negare, denegare, infitiri; abnuere.  
**depart**, abire, abscedere, decedere, discedere; exire, excedere; migrare, proficisci.  
**departure**, abitus, discessus; **take**, proficisci.  
**deposit**, ponere.  
**depressed**, attonitus.  
**depressing**, tristis.  
**deprive**, privare, adimere.  
**deride**, deridere.  
**descend**, descendere.  
**describe**, exponere.  
**desert**, (s.) deserta, vastitas; (v.) deserere, relinquere; (*military*) transire, transfugere.  
**deserter**, transfuga, desertor.  
**desertion**, transitio, defectio.  
**deserve**, merere, dignum esse; **deserving**, dignus, meritus.  
**design**, consilium.  
**desire**, (s.) cupido, cupiditas, voluntas; according to, ex sententia; (v.) cupere, desiderare, velle, optare.  
**desirous**, cupidus; **be**, cupere, velle.  
**despair**, despair of, desperare.  
**despatch**, mittere, dimittere, prae-mittere.  
**desperado**, perditus.  
**despise**, contemnere, aspernari.  
**despoil**, spoliare.  
**destine**, destinare.  
**destroy**, delere; vastare, auferre; interi-

mere, caedere; exscindere, pessum dare; **be destroyed**, ruere.  
**destruction**, perniciēs.  
**destructive**, perniciosus.  
**detain**, retinere, tenere, sustinere.  
**deter**, detertere.  
**determine**, statuere, constituere, decernere; consilium capere.  
**detract**, detrahere.  
**devastate**, vastare.  
**devastation**, populatio.  
**devastator**, populator.  
**devote**, devovere.  
**diadem**, diadema.  
**Diana**, Diana.  
**dictator**, dictator.  
**die**, mori, decedere, mortem obire.  
**differ**, dissentire, differre.  
**difference**, *use interest or refert*.  
**different**, alius, dissimilis; **to be**, distare; **differently**, secus.  
**difficult**, difficilis.  
**difficulty**, difficultas; **with**, aegre, difficile; (= *quarrel*) simultas.  
**dignified**, gravis.  
**dignity**, dignitas; (= *office*) magistratus.  
**dilatoriness**, cunctatio.  
**diligence**, diligentia.  
**diminish**, minuere, diminuere, imminuere.  
**dinner**, cena, prandium.  
**Dionysius**, Dionysius.  
**direction**, praeceptum.  
**disagree**, dissentire.  
**disagreement**, discordia, dissensio, controversia.  
**disappear**, vanescere, abscedere.  
**disaster**, calamitas, clades, incommodum.  
**disastrous**, gravis.  
**discern**, cernere.  
**disclose**, aperire, enuntiare, expromere.

discourse, oratio.  
 discredit, vituperatio.  
 discuss, tractare, agere, disputare.  
 discussion, controversia.  
 disease, morbus.  
 disgrace, dedecus, flagitium, infamia.  
 disgraced, foedus.  
 disgraceful, infamis, foedus, turpis;  
     *dedecus may also be used.*  
 dishonesty, fraus.  
 dismiss, dimittere.  
 dispense with, carere.  
 disposed to think, dubitare.  
 disposition, animus, ingenium.  
 dispute, controversia.  
 dissension, dissensio.  
 dissuade, dissuadere, revocare.  
 distance, from a, c longinquo.  
 distant, be, abesse, distare.  
 distinction, ornatus.  
 distinguished, clarus, insignis, sum-  
     mus.  
 distress, angor.  
 distressed, be, angi, dolere, torqueri.  
 district, *use* fines.  
 distrust, diffidere.  
 disturb, turbare, perturbare.  
 disturbance, tumultus.  
 ditch, fossa.  
 divert, convertere.  
 divide, dividere.  
 divine, divinus.  
 divulge, patefacere, enuntiare.  
 dizzy, become, vertigine corripere.  
 do, facere; agere, agitare; how do you  
     do? quid agis?  
 doctrine, disciplina.  
 Dolabella, Dolabella.  
 domestic, domesticus.  
 dominion, regnum.  
 donkey, asellus.  
 door, ostium, ianua; out of doors,  
     foras.

Dorippa, Dorippa.  
 doubt, (s.) *use* dubius; be in, be mat-  
     ter of, in dubio esse; (v.) dubitare,  
     alicui dubium esse.  
 doubtful, anceps, dubius.  
 drag, trahere.  
 drain, haurire, exhaustire.  
 draw, trahere, stringere; off, (water)  
     emittere; out, extrahere, educere;  
     together, cogere; up, instruere,  
     educere.  
 dread, vereri, timere.  
 dress, tunica, vestimentum.  
 drink, (s.) potio; (v.) bibere, potare.  
 drive, agere, agitare, pellere; back,  
     repellere; from position, loco mo-  
     vere; on, rapere; out, eicere, ex-  
     pellere, pellere.  
 Drusus, Drusus.  
 dry, siccus; ground, *use* aridum.  
 duck, anas.  
 due, debere; to be due, also dandum  
     esse.  
 Duilius, Duilius.  
 dull, hebetare.  
 dumb, surdus.  
 durance, custodia; keep in, custodire.  
 duty, officium.  
 Dyrrachium, Dyrrachium.

## E

each, uterque; each other, *use* inter  
     se, nos, vos, etc.  
 eager, avidus, cupidus; be, avere, stu-  
     dere; become, concupiscere.  
 ear, auris.  
 early in the morning, mane.  
 earn, mereri.  
 earnest, gravis.  
 earth, terra.  
 earthquake, terrae (or terrarum)  
     motus.

east, oriens.  
 easy, facilis, mollis; **easily**, facile.  
 eat, edere.  
 Ebro, Iberus.  
 eclipse, defectio; **be in**, laborare.  
 economical, diligens.  
 edict, edictum; **make, publish**, edicere.  
 efface in memory, oblitterare in animo.  
 effect, efficere.  
 effigy, imago.  
 effort, make, conari, rem temptare.  
 Egypt, Aegyptus.  
 Egyptian, Aegyptius.  
 eight, octo; **hundred**, octingenti.  
 eighteen, duodeviginti.  
 either, uterque.  
 elegant, lautus, venustus.  
 elephant, elephantus.  
 eloquence, eloquentia.  
 eloquent, eloquens; **eloquently**, eloquenter.  
 else, alius.  
 embark, (*act.*) imponere in navem; (*pass.*) ascendere navem.  
 embassy, legatio.  
 embrace, amplecti, complecti.  
 emergency, tempus.  
 emissary, homo, *or to be left untranslated*.  
 empire, imperium *if military; otherwise*, regnum, summa imperii.  
 employ, adhibere.  
 end, (*s.*) finis, extremum; **bring to an**, conficere; **put an**, finem facere; (*v.*) finire.  
 endeavor, (*s.*) conatum; (*v.*) conari, temptare, operam dare.  
 endowed, praeditus.  
 endure, pati, ferre; perpeti.  
 enduring, stabilis.  
 Endymion, Endymion.

enemy, hostis. inimicus; **of the**, *use* hostilis.  
 energetic, impiger; **energetically**, impigre.  
 energy, impetus, vis; industria.  
 engagement, proelium, certamen; *often res.*  
 engross, occupare.  
 enhance, augere.  
 enjoin, iniungere.  
 enjoy, frui.  
 enough, satis.  
 enraged, be, iracundia efferri.  
 enrich, inaurare; **one's self**, divitem fieri.  
 enrol, conscribere, adscire.  
 ensconced, be, se tenere.  
 enter, inire, intrare, ingredi; **upon**, ingredi, inire; **a war**, bellum inferre; (*in an account book*) referre.  
 enthusiasm, enthusiastic support, studium.  
 entreat, precari, rogare.  
 entreaty, (*prex*).  
 enumerate, numerare.  
 envoy, legatus.  
 envy, (*s.*) invidia, odium; (*v.*) invidere.  
 Ephesus, Ephesus.  
 epic, epicus.  
 Epicurus, Epicurus.  
 equal, (*adj.*) par, aequus; **equally**, aequae; **make**, exaequare; (*v.*) aequare, aequiperare.  
 equanimity, aequus animus.  
 equipment, suppellectilis.  
 error, error.  
 escape, (*s.*) fuga; (*v.*) fugere, effugere, evadere; **notice**, fugere.  
 especial, praecipuus; **especially**, maxime, potissimum, praesertim.  
 estate, (*rank*) ordo; (*property*) praedium, fundus.  
 esteem, aestimare, diligere.

**estimate**, aestimare, ponderare.  
**eternal**, immortalis, **eternal-existence**, aeternitas.  
**Etruria**, Etruria.  
**Etrurian**, Etruscus.  
**Eumenes**, Eumenes.  
**eunuch**, spado.  
**Europe, of**, Europaeus.  
**evacuate**, exire, relinquere, destituere.  
**even**, aequus, anceps; **etiam**; **even if**, etsi, etiamsi; **not even**, ne . . . quidem.  
**evening**, vesperum.  
**evenness**, aquae vires.  
**event**, eventus, eventum, res.  
**ever**, umquam; **if ever**, si quando.  
**everlasting**, sempiternus.  
**every**, quisque, omnis; **body**, omnes; **day**, cottidie; **thing**, omnia.  
**evident**, be, apparere, videri.  
**evil**, malus.  
**exact**, exigere.  
**examine**, cognoscere, inspicere, recognoscere.  
**example**, exemplum; **after**, ad.  
**excel**, excellere, praestare.  
**excellent**, eximius, excellens, optimus.  
**except**, praeter, nisi.  
**exceptional**, eximius, singularis.  
**excessive**, nimius.  
**excite**, movere, commovere, permovere.  
**ex-consul**, consularis.  
**excuse**, (s.) excusatio, causa; (v.) excusare.  
**execrate**, execrare.  
**execute**, interficere, occidere.  
**exercise**, exercere.  
**exhort**, hortari.  
**exile**, (s.) exsul, exsilium; **be in**, exsulare; (v.) expellere, pellere, eicere.  
**exist**, esse.  
**expect**, expectare.  
**expectation**, expectatio.

**expedition**, iter.  
**expel**, expellere.  
**expense**, sumptus; **at the public**, publice.  
**experience**, usus.  
**expiation**, expiatio.  
**expire**, exstingui.  
**explain**, explicare.  
**exploit**, res gesta.  
**exportation**, exportatio.  
**extant**, be, exstare, comparare.  
**extraordinary**, eximius, mirus.  
**extravagant**, sumptuosus, ambitiosus.  
**extreme**, extremus, supremus, ultimus.  
**eye**, oculus; **in the eyes of**, apud or *Dative*.

## F

**Fabius**, Fabius.  
**face**, os, facies, vultus.  
**faction**, factio, partes.  
**factionous**, turbulentus.  
**fail**, deficere; **to notice**, aliquem fallere.  
**faint**, concidere.  
**fair**, aequus.  
**fairness**, aequitas.  
**faith**, fides.  
**faithful**, fidelis, fidus.  
**fall**, (s.) mors; (v.) cadere, concidere; occumbere, perire, mori; **down**, decidere; **into**, incidere; **on**, among, upon, in with, incidere; **upon**, (*fear*) incedere with *dat.*; **into ruins**, interire; **fallen**, also strati.  
**falling back**, receptus.  
**false**, falsus.  
**family**, familia.  
**famine**, fames.  
**famous**, clarus.  
**far**, procul; **as far as possible**, quam maxime; **thus far**, adhuc.



**fare**, agere; **how do you fare**, quid agis.

**fascēs**, fascēs.

**fashion**, mos, consuetudo.

**fate**, fatum, sors.

**father**, pater, parens.

**fatigue**, fatigare.

**fault**, culpa, peccatum, vitium; **find**, culpāre; **it is the fault of**, per aliquem stat.

**faultless**, emendatus.

**favor**, (s.) beneficium, *often* gratum, pergratum; **do**, praestare, gratum facere; (v.) favere.

**fear**, (s.) timor, metus, formido; (v.) timere, metuere, formidare, vereri, horrere.

**feast**, epulae.

**feel**, sentire, intellegere; **loss**, desiderare; **gratitude**, gratiam habere.

**feeling**, sensus; **feelings**, animus, animi.

**fell**, caedere.

**fellow**, homo; **fellow-citizen**, civis.

**festive**, festivus.

**few**, pauci; **how few**, quotus quisque; **very**, perpauci.

**fickle**, vanus.

**fidelity**, fides.

**field**, ager; (= *plain*) campus.

**fierce**, atrox, ferox; **fiercely**, ferociter.

**fifth**, quintus.

**fifty**, quinquaginta.

**fight**, (s.) pugna; (v.) pugnare, dimicare; **out**, hard, depugnare, dimicare.

**fighter**, bellator.

**figure**, corpus.

**fill**, complere, opplere; (*office*) gerere.

**finally**, denique, postremo, ad postremum.

**find**, invenire, reperire, cognoscere; (= *come upon*) offendere; **out**, certio-

rem fieri, intellegere, cognoscere, invenire; **death**, occumbere mortem.

**fine**, (*adj.*) praeclarus; **in fine**, denique; (v.) multare.

**finish**, finire, conficere; **up**, conficere.

**fire**, (s.) ignis, incendium; (v.) incendere.

**firmness**, constantia, firmitas.

**first**, primus; **at**, primo, primum.

**fish**, pisces.

**fit**, fitted, aptus, idoneus.

**five**, quinque; **hundred**, quingenti.

**fix** (*day*), dicere; **fixed**, certus, destinatus, fixus.

**flattery**, adulatio.

**flaw**, vitium.

**flee**, fugere, profugere; **for protection**, confugere.

**fleet**, (*adj.*) velox; (s.) classis.

**flight**, fuga; **take to**, fugam capere, fugam facere; **in fugam se conferre**.

**flock**, (v.) se conferre.

**flourish**, florere.

**foe**, hostis.

**foliage**, frons.

**follow**, sequi; consequi, persequi, subsequi; accidere post; **on**, subsequi; **up**, insequi; (*advice, counsel, law*) uti; (= *obey*) obtemperare.

**following**, insequens, proximus, posterus.

**folly**, dementia.

**fool**, fatuus, stultus.

**foolish**, amens, stultus.

**foot**, pes; **set**, pedem inferre, efferre; **have on foot**, moliri.

**for**, nam, enim; (= *on account of*) propter; de.

**forage**, pabulum.

**forbode**, praesagire.

**force**, (s.) vis, vires; **forces**, copiae, *or use poss. pron.*; **in force**, (*sally*) *use magnus*; (v.) cogere.

forcibly, vi.  
 foreign, externus.  
 foreigner, peregrinus, barbarus.  
 foresight, prudentia.  
 forest, silva.  
 forestall, praeoccupare.  
 foretell, praedicere.  
 forget, oblivisci.  
 forgetful, immemor, oblitus.  
 forgive, ignoscere.  
 form, (s.) forma; (v.) instituere.  
 former, prior; *often* ille.  
 forsooth, scilicet, videlicet.  
 fort, castellum.  
 fortification, munimentum, munitio.  
 fortify, munire, communire.  
 fortress, castellum.  
 fortune, fortuna, sors; **good**, felicitas;  
     **be the good fortune of**, contingere.  
 forty, quadraginta.  
 found, condere.  
 foundation, shake, labefactare.  
 founder, conditor.  
 four, quattuor.  
 fourteen, quattuordecim.  
 frame, constituere.  
 fray, proelium.  
 freak, prodigium.  
 free, liber; **from**, sine; **one is free to**,  
     licet; **set free**, liberare.  
 freedman, libertus.  
 freedom, libertas.  
 freeman, liber.  
 friend, friendly, amicus.  
 friendship, amicitia.  
 fright, metus.  
 frighten, terrere; **thoroughly**, conter-  
     rere; **out of one's senses**, exanimare.  
 from, ab, de, ex.  
 frontier, fines.  
 fruit, fructus.  
 fruitless, infructuosus.  
 fugitive, fugitivus, fugiens.

full, plenus; *often com- with a verb*;  
     (*used of style*) creber.  
 Fulvius, Fulvius.  
 funeral, funus.  
 Furius, Furius.  
 furnish, (*help*) ferre; **furnished**, orna-  
     tus.  
 further, *use* plus, amplius, longius;  
     **furthest**, ultimus.  
 fury, furia.  
 future, futurum.

## G

gain, (s.) lucrum; (v.) adipisci, assequi.  
 Gaius, C., Gaius.  
 Galba, Galba.  
 gallant, fortis.  
 game, ludus.  
 gang, familia.  
 gap, intervallum.  
 garden, hortus.  
 garment, vestis, vestimentum.  
 garrison, (s.) praesidium, oppidan-  
     (v.) praesidere.  
 gate, porta, ianua.  
 gate-keeper, ianitor.  
 Gaul, Gallia; **a**, Gallus.  
 general, imperator, dux, praefectus.  
 generosity, liberalitas.  
 genius, ingenium.  
 gentle, mansuetus.  
 gentleman, vir optimus.  
 George, Georgius.  
 German, Germanus.  
 get, adipisci, impetrare; **off**, (= *escape*)  
     evadere; (= *move away*) discedere;  
 out, (= *extricate*) explicare; **to**,  
     (= *arrive*) venire, advenire, pervenire;  
 to land, appellere; **together**, colli-  
     gere, conficere; **up**, (= *arrange*) in-  
     struere; **well**, convalescere.  
 gift, donum, munus.

**give**, dare, tribuere, tradere; **over to**, dedere, permittere; **up**, dare, tradere, relinquere, omittere; **up opinion**, de opinione decedere; **way**, inclinare; **given to**, deditus.

**glad, be**, gaudere.

**Glaucia**, Glaucia.

**glorious**, clarus, celebr, praeclarus.

**glory**, gloria, laus; **with**, praeclare.

**glow**, ardere.

**glut**, satiare.

**Gnaeus**, Cn., Gnaeus.

**go, ire**; **out**, exire; **over** (= *desert*), deficere; **through**, pervadere.

**god**, deus.

**gold**, aurum.

**golden**, aureus.

**good**, bonus; **do**, usui esse, prodesse; **-luck**, felicitas; **-will**, benevolentia; **better**, melius, satius.

**goods**, res.

**goose**, anser.

**Gorgias**, Gorgias.

**govern**, regere, gubernare.

**government**, civitas, imperium.

**granary**, horreum.

**grandfather**, avus; **of a** (*adj.*), avitus.

**grant**, concedere, tribuere, dare, permittere.

**grasp**, comprehendere, capere.

**grassy**, herbidus.

**grateful**, gratus.

**gratitude**, gratia; **feel**, gratiam habere; **show-by-action**, referre.

**great**, magnus, ingens; **as great as**, tantus...quantus; **so**, tantus; **greater**, plus *with gen.*; **greatly**, admodum, magnopere.

**greatness**, magnitudo.

**Greece**, Graecia; **of**, Graecus.

**greedy**, avidus.

**Greek**, Graecus.

**green** (*of old age*), vegetus.

**grey**, caesius.

**grief**, dolor, maeror.

**grieve**, dolere.

**grievous**, gravis, miser.

**groan**, (*s.*) gemitus; (*v.*) ingemescere.

**ground**, locus; **give**, cedere.

**grove**, nemus.

**grudge**, inimicitia.

**guarantee**, (*s.*) praesidium; (*v.*) constringere.

**guard**, (*s.*) custos; **be on one's**, cavere; **put a guard over**, custodire; (*v.*) custodire.

**guardian**, custos.

**guest**, hospes, convictor.

**guide**, (*s.*) dux; (*v.*) ducere.

**guilt**, fraus.

**guilty**, malus, improbus, reus; **be**, reum esse, obstringi.

## H

**habit**, consuetudo, mos.

**half-inclined to think**, dubitare an.

**Hamilcar**, Hamilcar.

**hamper**, cogere.

**hand**, manus; **be at hand**, adesse; **in the hands of**, penes.

**hand over**, tradere.

**handsome**, pulcher.

**hang**, pendere; **one's self**, vitam suspendio finire.

**Hannibal**, Hannibal.

**happen**, accidere, contingere, evenire; usu venire; esse, fieri.

**happiness**, felicitas.

**happy**, beatus, felix; **happily**, beate.

**harangue**, contionari.

**harass**, vexare.

**harbor**, portus.

**hard**, durus, difficilis; **hard to manage**, difficilis; **hard on**, gravis.

**harmful**, be, nocere.

**harmonize**, consentire.  
**harsh**, asper, severus; **harshly**, aspere.  
**hasten**, festinare, maturare.  
**hatch**, excludere.  
**hate**, (s.) odium; (v.) odisse; (*pass.*) odio esse.  
**hateful**, inivsus, inimicus.  
**hatred**, odium.  
**have**, habere; **have on**, indui; **have to do with**, rem esse cum.  
**head**, caput; **take into**, in animum inducere.  
**headlong**, praeceps, effusus.  
**headquarters**, praetorium.  
**health**, valetudo, salus, sanitas.  
**healthy**, sanus, salubris.  
**hear**, audire, exaudire; **of**, rescire.  
**heart**, cor; animus, ingenium; **take to** (= *embrace*), amplecti.  
**heartily**, valde.  
**heaven**, caelum.  
**height**, altitudo.  
**heir**, heres.  
**help**, (s.) auxilium, praesidium, ops; **furnish**, auxilium ferre; (v.) iuvare, adiuvaré; auxilio esse, auxiliari; succurrere.  
**hen**, gallina.  
**hence**, (*of place*) hinc; (*of time*) ad, ab hinc, ex quo; (*logical*) itaque.  
**herald**, caduceator.  
**here**, hic; (= *hither*) huc; **here's**, en.  
**hereafter**, posthac.  
**hereditary**, hereditarius.  
**Herod**, Herodes.  
**hesitate**, cunctari, dubitare.  
**hide**, celare, occultare; operiri.  
**hie**, se conferre; **back**, reflectere.  
**Hieronymus**, Hieronymus.  
**high**, altus, eximius; **highest**, *also* summus; **office**, magistratus; **position**, fastigium.  
**highminded**, magnanimus, magnificus.

**high-priest**, antistes.  
**highwayman**, latro.  
**hill**, collis, clivus.  
**hillock**, tumulus.  
**Himera**, Himera.  
**Himilco**, Himilco.  
**hinder**, impedire.  
**hindrance**, impedimentum.  
**Hippias**, Hippias.  
**hire**, conducere.  
**his**, suus, eius.  
**historian**, historicus, scriptor rerum.  
**history**, historia, historiae.  
**hit** (= *tally*), quadrare.  
**hold**, habere, tenere; capere, continere; obtinere; **out** (= *extend*), porrigere; (= *endure*), resistere; **lay hold on**, apprehendere.  
**home**, domus; **at**, domi; (*adj.*) domesticus.  
**Homer**, Homerus.  
**honor**, (s.) honor, fides, praemium; (v.) colere, ornare, observare.  
**honorable**, honestus; **honorably**, honeste.  
**hook**, hamus.  
**hope**, (s.) spes; (v.) sperare; **for**, sperare.  
**hopeful**, **be**, spem habere, bene sperare.  
**horde**, caterva.  
**horrible**, atrox.  
**horse**, equus.  
**Hortensius**, Hortensius.  
**hospitality**, hospitium, liberalitas.  
**hostile**, infestus, hostilis.  
**hound**, canis.  
**hour**, hora.  
**house**, aedes, domus, aedificium, tetum; **at the house of**, apud.  
**household**, domus, familia.  
**how**, qui, quo modo; (*with adj.*) quam;  
**how much**, quantum; **no matter**



how, *use* quivis or quantusvis; **how**  
are you? quid agis?  
however, quamquam, quamvis; utut.  
human, humanus; **being**, homo.  
humanity, humanitas.  
humble, humilis; **-origin**, ignobilitas.  
humor (*v.*), morem gerere.  
hundred, centum; **hundredth**, centesimus.  
hunger, fames.  
hunt, venari; **down**, insectari.  
hurl, iacere.  
hurry, festinare, contendere; **to**, advolare.  
husband, vir, coniunx, maritus.  
hush, conticescere.  
hyena, hyaena.

I

I, ego.  
Iberus, Iberus.  
idle, piger; (*of speech*) vanus.  
if, si; **if only**, modo, dummodo.  
ignorance, ignorantia.  
ignorant, nescius, ignarus; **be**, ignorare, nescium esse.  
ill, (*adj.*) aeger, aegrotus, morbo implicitus; **fall ill**, aegrotare; (*adv.*) male.  
ill-health, valetudo.  
ill-luck, res adversae.  
illness, valetudo.  
illumine, illuminare.  
image, imago.  
imagine, opinari, sibi substituere.  
imitate, imitari.  
imitator, imitator.  
immediately, statim.  
immortal, immortalis, sempiternus;  
**immortal fame**, immortalitas.  
immortality, immortalitas.  
impel, impellere.

impend, imminere, impendere.  
impious, impius.  
implicated, conscius.  
implore, implorare.  
important, gravis; **less**, minor.  
importation, invection.  
impose, imponere.  
imprecate, imprecari.  
impudent, impudens.  
in, in.  
incautious, incautus, imprudens; **in-**  
**cautiously**, incaute.  
incite, impellere, incitare.  
**inclined to think**, nescire an, dubitare an.  
inconsiderately, temere.  
increase, crescere, augere.  
incredible, incredibilis.  
incurable, insanabilis, insuperabilis.  
indebtedness, aes alienum.  
indeed, quidem, equidem.  
India, India.  
indifferent, **be**, non curare.  
indignant, **be**, indignari, indigne ferre.  
indisposed, **be**, languescere.  
individual, unus quisque, singulus;  
*often omitted.*  
indolent, iners.  
indulge, indulgere.  
inextricable, inextricabilis.  
infantry, pedes, pedites.  
inferior, inferior, humilis.  
infirmity, infirmitas.  
inflamed, incensus.  
influence, auctoritas; **have**, valere.  
influential, (*some form of*) amplus; **be**,  
valere.  
inform, certiore facere, docere.  
inhabitant, incola.  
inhuman, inhumanus.  
injure, laedere, nocere, obesse.  
injury, iniuria; **do**, nocere.  
injustice, iniustitia, iniuria.

ink, atramentum.  
 innate, innatus.  
 innocent, innocens.  
 innumerable, innumerabilis.  
 inquire, interrogare, quaerere.  
 insanity, insania.  
 insert, inserere.  
 insight, prudentia.  
 insist, instare.  
 inspect, inspicere.  
 inspire, (e.g. *fear*) facere; inspired, incensus.  
 instigate, impellere.  
 institutions, institutum.  
 instruct, docere, negotium dare.  
 instructions, praecepta.  
 insult, contumelia, iniuria.  
 intact, integer, incolumis.  
 integrity, integritas.  
 intellect, ingenium.  
 intelligence, nuntius.  
 intensely, mirabiliter.  
 intent, intentus.  
 intention, animus.  
 intercede, deprecari.  
 interest, (s.) commodum, utilitas; **be of**, interesse, referre; **with interest**, cumulate; **to the interest of**, ex; (v.) movere.  
 interested in, **be**, curae esse.  
 intermit, intermittere.  
 interpret, accipere.  
 interrupt, intervenire.  
 intervene, intercedere.  
 intervention, intercessio, interventus.  
 interview, sermo.  
 intimacy, familiaritas.  
 intimate, familiaris; **on intimate terms**, familiariter.  
 into, in.  
 intrenchment, vallum.  
 introduce, introducere.  
 intrust, credere, committere.

invest, circumsedere.  
 investigation, quaestio; **without**, causa indicta, causa incognita; **conduct**, quaestionem ferre.  
 invitation, give, invitare.  
 invite, invitare.  
 Iphigenia, Iphigenia.  
 irascible, iracundus.  
 island, insula.  
 Isocrates, Isocrates.  
 issue, exitus.  
 Isthmus, Isthmus.  
 Italian, Italicus.  
 Italy, Italia.

## J

javelin, telum.  
 jest, (s.) iocus; (v.) ludere.  
 join in battle, proelium committere, manum conserere.  
 jostle, iactare.  
 jot, not a, nihil.  
 journey, iter.  
 joy, laetitia, gaudium.  
 joyful, laetus; **be**, gaudere.  
 judge, (s.) iudex; (v.) iudicare, aestimare, arbitrari.  
 judgment, iudicium; **give**, iudicium ferre, censere, iudicare.  
 judicial procedure, **in**, in iudicando.  
 Jugurtha, Iugurtha.  
 Jupiter, Juppiter.  
 juryman, iudex.  
 just, justus; (*adv.*) perinde, proinde, non secus.  
 justice, iustitia; *sometimes* aequum.  
 justify, purgare.

## K

keen, acer, acutus.  
 keep, tenere, retinere, tueri, asservare;  
 (= *remain*) se tenere; **away from**,

abstinere; **back**, prohibere, reservare, celare; **free**, conservare; **out**, prohibere; **from**, retinere, celare; **together**, continere; **up**, continuare; (*promise*) servare; (= prevent) arcere, prohibere; **keep silent**, silere.  
**kill**, caedere, interficere, occidere.  
**kind**, **kindly**, (*adj.*) *benignus, bonus*;  
 (*s.*) *genus; often modus*.  
**kindness**, *bonitas, beneficium*.  
**king**, *rex*.  
**kingdom**, *regnum*.  
**knave**, *improbis*.  
**knight**, *eques*.  
**knot**, *nodus*.  
**know**, *scire, cognovisse, novisse*; **not**, *nescire, ignarum esse, ignorare*.  
**knowledge**, *scientia*.  
**known**, *notus*; **not**, *ignotus*; **well-**, *vulgatus, sometimes combined with tritus*; **make**, *vulgare, divulgare*.

## L

**Labici**, *Labici*.  
**Labienus**, *Labienus*.  
**labor**, *labor*.  
**Lacedaemonian**, *Lacedaemonius*.  
**lack**, (*s.*) *desiderium*; (*v.*) *use deesse*.  
**lacking**, **be**, *abesse, deesse*.  
**lad**, *iuvenis*.  
**laden**, *onustus*.  
**lady**, *mulier*.  
**Laelius**, *Laelius*.  
**land**, *terra, ager*; **get to**, *appellere*;  
**on land**, (*adj.*) *terrestris*.  
**language**, *lingua, oratio, sermo, vox*.  
**lap**, *sinus*.  
**lash**, *verbera*.  
**last**, (*adj.*) *novissimus, postremus, summus, supremus, ultimus*; **at last**, *ad postremum, postremo, tandem*;  
 (*v.*) *manere, esse*.

**lasting**, *diuturnus*.  
**late**, *serus*; **later**, *often post*; **lately**, *nuper, proxime*; **too late**, *sero*.  
**Latins**, *Latini*.  
**Latium**, *Latium*.  
**laugh**, *ridere*; **at**, *deridere, irridere, ridere*.  
**law**, *lex, ius*.  
**lay aside**, *ponere, deponere*; **down**, *ponere, deponere, submittere*; **down** (*office*), *se abdicare*.  
**lead**, *ducere*; **away**, *deducere*; (= *induce*) *impellere*.  
**leader**, *princeps, dux*; **be**, *ducere*.  
**leading man**, *princeps*.  
**league**, *societas*.  
**lean against**, *incumbere*.  
**learn**, *discere, comperire; accipere, certiore fieri; cognoscere*.  
**learned**, *doctus, peritus, eruditus, consultus*.  
**least**, (*adv.*) *minime*.  
**leave**, *relinquere; excedere, exire, egredi, proficisci, sortiri; (by will) legare; off, desinere*.  
**lecture-room**, *auditorium*.  
**left**, *laevus, sinister*; (= *remaining*) *reliquus*.  
**legacy hunter**, *heredipeta*.  
**legion**, *legio*.  
**leisure**, *otium*; **be at**, *otiosum esse*.  
**lend**, *mutuum dare; sometimes afferre*.  
**length**, **at**, *tandem*.  
**Lentulus**, *Lentulus*.  
**Lepidus**, *Lepidus*.  
**less**, *minus*.  
**lessen**, *minuere, imminuere, levare*.  
**let go**, *dimittere*; **let in**, *admittere*; **let slip**, *dimittere, praetermittere*.  
**letter**, *litterae, epistula*.  
**level**, *sternere*.  
**Lewis**, *Ludovicus*.  
**liberal**, *liberalis; liberally, libere*.

**liberality**, liberalitas.  
**liberty**, libertas.  
**Libyan**, *use gen. of Libya*.  
**licitor**, licitor.  
**lie**, mentiri; iacere; **torpid**, torpere.  
**lieutenant**, legatus.  
**life**, vita; *often* salus.  
**Ligarius**, Ligarius.  
**light**, lux; **grow**, lucescere; **be**, lucere.  
**light-armed**, expeditus.  
**lighten**, levare.  
**Ligurians**, Ligures.  
**like**, (*adj.*) similis; (*adv.*) tamquam;  
     (*v.*) diligere, velle, amare.  
**likely**, verisimilis; **seem**, videri.  
**limb**, membrum.  
**limit**, finis, terminus.  
**line**, (*of battle*) acies; (*of march*) agmen;  
     **in**, structus.  
**linger**, cunctari.  
**list**, litterae.  
**listen to**, audire, auscultare.  
**literature**, litterae.  
**little**, parvus; **too**, parum.  
**live**, vivere, habitare, esse; superstitem  
     esse.  
**living**, (*adj.*) vivus; **creature**, animal;  
     (*s.*) victus.  
**load**, cumulare, onerare.  
**loan**, (*s.*) mutuum; (*v.*) mutuum dare.  
**locate**, locare.  
**locust**, locusta.  
**lodgings**, take, habitare.  
**lofty**, excelsus.  
**long**, (*adj.*) longus, diuturnus; (*adv.*)  
     diu, (*with adv. of time*) multo; **longer**,  
     diutius; **for a long time**, diu, iam  
     diu, in longum; **as long as**, quoad.  
**long for**, desiderare, exoptare.  
**longing**, desiderium.  
**look at**, spectare; **back**, respicere; **for**,  
     quaerere, exspectare, sperare; **in**, in-  
     spicere; **to**, vereri; **up**, quaerere.

**lop off**, resecare.  
**lord**, (*s.*) dominus; (*v.*) dominare.  
**lose**, amittere, perdere; **to be lost**,  
     perire.  
**loss**, damnum, iactura; detrimentum,  
     caedes; **feel**, desiderare.  
**loudly**, clare.  
**love**, (*s.*) amor, benevolentia; (*v.*)  
     amare, diligere.  
**lovely**, pulcher.  
**low**, humilis, ignobilis; **lower**, inferior;  
     **lay low**, sternere.  
**low-born**, ignobilis.  
**lower gods**, inferi.  
**loyal service**, obsequium.  
**loyalty**, pietas, fides.  
**lucidly**, lucide, dilucide.  
**Lucius**, L., Lucius.  
**luck**, fortuna; **good**, felicitas.  
**lucky**, felix.  
**Lucretius**, Lucretius.  
**Lucullus**, Lucullus.  
**luncheon**, prandium.  
**lust**, cupiditas, libido, voluptas.  
**luxury**, luxus, luxuria.  
**Lyons**, of, Lugdunensis.  
**Lysander**, Lysander.

## M

**Macedon**, Macedonia; **of**, Macedo.  
**Macedonian**, Macedonius; Macedo.  
**machinations**, insidiae.  
**madness**, insania, furor.  
**Maevius**, Maevius.  
**magistracy**, magistratus.  
**magnificent**, magnificus, grandis.  
**Mago**, Mago.  
**maiden**, virgo.  
**mainland**, continens.  
**maintain**, aio.  
**make**, facere, efficere, creare; **for**,  
     petere, repetere.



malady, aegrotatio.

maltreat, violare.

Mamilius, Mamilius.

man, homo, vir; *often* is, quis, quisque, etc., or omit; (*generic*) homines; **young man**, iuvenis; **old man**, senex; to a man, ad unum.

manage, gerere, regere, administrare.

manifest, manifestus.

manifold, multiplex.

mankind, mortales.

Manlius, Manlius.

manly, virilis.

manner, modus.

**many**, multus, plures; **good many**, plurimus; **so many**, tot; **as many as**, tot . . . quot.

mar, deformare.

Marathon, of, Marathonius.

march, (s.) iter; **be on the**, adventare; (v.) progredi, procedere, iter facere; **forth, out**, egredi.

Marcellus, Marcellus.

Marcus, M., Marcus.

maritime, maritimus.

Marius, Marius.

marriage, nuptiae.

married woman, mater familias.

marry, nubere, uxorem ducere.

marvelous, admirabilis.

Masinissa, Masinissa.

mass, (s.) multitudo; **masses**, multitudo, vulgus, plebs; **confused**, turba; (v.) conferre, congregare.

massacre, caedes.

master, dominus, erus, magister.

match, par.

material, materies.

maternal, maternus.

matron, matrona.

matter, (s.) res; **decide**, rem gerere; **it matters**, refert.

may, *use licet*.

may be, forsitan.

meagre numbers, paucitas.

meal, mola.

mean, (*adj.*) sordidus; (v.) dicere.

meaning, vis.

meantime, meanwhile, interea, interim.

measure, (s.) modus; *often* res; (v.) metiri.

meat (*food*), cibus.

medicine, medicina.

meditate, cogitare, consilium capere.

meditation, cogitatio.

meet, convenire, occurrere, obviam ire, obviam esse; ad; (*death*) oppetere; (*in battle*) concurrere.

meeting, (*deliberative*) concilium.

Megalensian, Megalensis.

memoir, commentarius.

memorable, memorabilis.

memory, memoria; **in the memory of men**, post memoriam hominum.

mention, (s.) mentio; (v.) memorare, nominare; **by name**, nominare.

merchant, mercator.

mercy, misericordia.

merely, modo.

message, nuntius.

Messana, Messana.

messenger, nuntius.

Metellus, Metellus.

Metrodorus, Metrodorus.

midnight, media nox.

midst, medius.

might, vis; **with might and main**, summa vi.

mild, lenis, mitis; **mildly**, leniter.

mile, mille passus.

military, militaris; **career**, operations, militia; **science**, res militaris; **do military service**, militare.

Milo, Milo.

Miltiades, Miltiades.

mind, animus, mens; **make up one's mind**, statuere, decernere.  
**mingle**, permiscere.  
**mischievous**, perniciosus.  
**miserable**, miser; (*of character*) determinus.  
**misery**, miseria.  
**misfortune**, incommodum, calamitas, casus; res adversae.  
**miss**, desiderare, requirere.  
**missing**, error.  
**mission**, legatio; res *may often be used*.  
**mistake**, error; **by**, per errorem.  
**mistaken**, be, errare, falli.  
**mistress**, (= *concubine*) paelex, meretrix; (*of household*) domina; (*of slaves*) era.  
**Mithridates**, Mithridates.  
**mixed multitude**, turba.  
**mob**, the, vulgus.  
**moderate**, modicus; **moderately well**, mediocriter.  
**moderation**, moderatio; **inclined to**, moderatus.  
**modest**, modestus.  
**modesty**, modestia, pudor.  
**mollify**, mitigare.  
**money**, pecunia, argentum.  
**monstrous**, nefarius.  
**month**, mensis.  
**moon**, luna.  
**morals**, mores.  
**more**, plus, amplius, magis.  
**most**, (*adj.*) plurimi, plerique; (*adv.*) maxime, plurimum, potissimum.  
**mother**, mater.  
**mother-in-law**, socrus.  
**motive**, causa.  
**moulder**, formator.  
**mound**, tumulus.  
**mountain**, mons.  
**mourn**, lugere.  
**mourning**, luctus.

**move**, movere, commovere; se movere, se commovere; (*forces*) (pro)movere.  
**much**, (*adj.*) multus; (*adv.*) magnopere; **very**, magnopere; **as much as**, tantus . . . quantus.  
**Mucius**, Mucius.  
**mud**, lutum.  
**multitude**, multitudo, vulgus, turba.  
**murder**, caedes, nex.  
**murderer**, homicidea.  
**Murena**, Murena.  
**murmur**, murmur.  
**musician**, musicus.  
**mute**, mutus.  
**my**, meus.  
**mystery**, mysterium.

## N

**Naevius**, Naevius.  
**naked**, nudus.  
**name**, (s.) nomen; (v.) nominare.  
**narrow**, angustus; **pass**, angustiae.  
**nation**, natio, gens, populus.  
**native**, *use patriae*.  
**naturally**, naturā.  
**nature**, natura, genus; **of what**, qualis.  
**naval**, navalis.  
**navigation**, navigatio.  
**navy**, naves.  
**near**, prope; **to come**, adventare.  
**nearly**, paene, fere, prope.  
**nearness**, propinquitas.  
**neat**, nitidus.  
**necessary**, necesse; *use opus*.  
**necessity**, necessitas.  
**need**, egere; opus; *often deesse*.  
**neglect**, neglegere.  
**neighbor**, vicinus, alter, accola.  
**neither**, neuter; **neither . . . nor**, neque . . . neque.  
**Nero**, Nero.  
**Nervii**, Nervii.

never, numquam.  
 nevertheless, tamen.  
 new, novus.  
 news, nuntius; **get**, certiorē fieri;  
     **carry**, nuntium adferre, renuntiare.  
 newspaper, acta diurna.  
 next, posterus, proximus.  
 night, nox; **-fall**, principium noctis.  
 nine, novem.  
 no, nullus; **no one, no man**, nemo;  
     **say no**, negare; **in no way** (*with verb*  
     *'concern'*), nihil.  
 nobility, nobilitas, nobiles.  
 noble, nobilis, clarus; **nobles**, opti-  
     mates.  
 noise, clamor, strepitus.  
 Nola, Nola.  
 none of = *no*.  
 Noricum, Noricum.  
 nose, nasus; **broken**, nasus conlisus.  
 not, non, haud.  
 note, litterulae, codicilli.  
 nothing, nihil.  
 notice, videre; **give**, pronuntiare.  
 notwithstanding, nihilominus.  
 novel, fabula.  
 now, nunc; **now . . . now**, modo . . .  
     modo.  
 nowhere, nusquam.  
 Numa, Numa.  
 number, numerus; **great number**,  
     multitudo, multi; **small number**,  
     pauci; **a number**, plures.  
 numerous, multus.  
 nurture, *use* alere.

O

oar, remus.  
 oath, ius iurandum, sacramentum.  
 obedience, oboedientia, obsequium.  
 obey, parere, oboedire.  
 object, nolle.  
 obscurity, obscuritas, ignobilitas.

observe, contemplare, servare.  
 obstinate, pertinax.  
 obtain, adipisci, obtinere; consequi, su-  
     mere.  
 occasion, tempus, occasio.  
 occupy, occupare, obsidere; **be occu-  
     pied**, versari.  
 occur to one's mind, in mentem alicui  
     venire.  
 ocean, Oceanus.  
 of, de.  
 odium, invidia.  
 off, be, abesse.  
 offer, dare, deferre, offerre, praeberē.  
 office, magistratus.  
 often, saepe; **as often as**, quoties.  
 old, vetus, antiquus; **older**, maior;  
     **oldest, eldest**, maximus natu; **in**  
     **the olden time**, antiquitus; **be . . .**  
     **years old**, . . . annos natum esse.  
 old age, senectus; **old man**, senex; **old**  
     **woman**, anus, anicula.  
 omen, omen, ostentum.  
 omit, omittere, praetermittere.  
 on, de.  
 once, semel; (= *formerly*), olim, quon-  
     dam; **at**, actutum, statim, e vestigio.  
 one, unus; **no one**, nemo; **one or the**  
     **other**, alteruter; **one another**, inter  
     se, nos, vos.  
 only, (*adj.*) solus, unus; (*adv.*) modo, so-  
     lum, tantum; **if only**, modo.  
 open, (*adj.*) patens, apertus.  
 open, (*v.*) solvere, aperire, resolvere;  
     **be**, patere.  
 openly, aperte, palam.  
 opinion, sententia, opinio, iudicium;  
     **form, have**, existimare; **give**, iudi-  
     cium facere; **give up**, de opinione  
     decedere.  
 opponent, adversarius.  
 opportunity, occasio, opportunitas;  
     **give**, offerre.

**oppose**, *opponere, adversari.*  
**opposite**, *contrarius, adversarius.*  
**oppress**, *opprimere, premere.*  
**or**, *aut, an, vel.*  
**oracle**, *oraculum.*  
**orator**, *orator.*  
**oratory**, *eloquentia.*  
**ordain**, *sancire.*  
**order**, (s.) (= *rank*) *ordo*; (= *command*) *iussum, imperatum*; **give orders**, *imperare*; (v.) *iubere.*  
**origin**, *origo.*  
**originate**, *oriri.*  
**other**, *alius*; **others**, *ceteri, reliqui*; **of others**, *alienus.*  
**otherwise**, *aliter.*  
**Othonian**, *Othonianus.*  
**ought**, *debere, oportere, convenire.*  
**our**, *noster.*  
**out, out of, ex; to be, foras exire; out of doors, foras.  
**outbreak**, *intemperies.*  
**outrage**, *indignitas, contumelia, iniuria.*  
**outsider**, (*adj.*) *peregrinus.*  
**overbearing**, *superbus.*  
**overburdensome**, *pergravis.*  
**overcome**, *vincere, superare.*  
**overhaul**, *consectari.*  
**overjoyed**, *laetus.*  
**overpower**, *opprimere.*  
**overtake**, *consequi.*  
**overthrow**, (s.) *pestis*; (v.) *evertere, delere.*  
**overturn**, *evertere.*  
**overwhelm**, *opprimere.*  
**owe**, *debere, oportere.*  
**owing to, be**, *feri with Ablative.*  
**own**, *proprius*; *often a form of ipse.*  
**owner**, *dominus.***

## P

**pacification, bring into, pacare.**  
**pacify, pacare.**

**package, fasciculus.**  
**pain, dolor.**  
**paint, pingere.**  
**painting, pictura, tabula.**  
**palace, regia, palatium.**  
**pale, be, pallere.**  
**parasite, parasitus.**  
**pardon, (s.) venia; (v.) ignoscere.**  
**parent, parens.**  
**part, pars; (= rôle) partes, persona;**  
**parts, loca; for the most, plerum-**  
**que, magna ex parte.**  
**particular, proprius.**  
**partisanship, studium.**  
**party, (= faction) pars, partes; din-**  
**ner-, cena.**  
**pass, (s.) angustiae; be at a desperate,**  
**magno discrimine nutare; come to,**  
**evenire.**  
**pass, (v.) transire; away, cedere; over,**  
**transcendere, praetervehi; round,**  
**circumferre; by, praetermittere, prae-**  
**terire; (law) ferre; (time) agere or**  
**(intr.) abire.**  
**passage, transitus.**  
**passing, transitus.**  
**passion, libido.**  
**past offences, ante actae res.**  
**patient (sick), aeger, aegrotus.**  
**patiently, patienter.**  
**patrician, patricius.**  
**patrimony, patrimonium.**  
**patrol, obambulare.**  
**pattern, exemplum, genus.**  
**Paullus, Paullus.**  
**pavilion, tabernaculum.**  
**pay, numerare, persolvere; down, nu-**  
**merare; attention, animum adhi-**  
**bere, curationem adhibere; penalty**  
**for, poenas dare, supplicia luere.**  
**peace, pax.**  
**peculiar, proprius.**  
**Peloponnesian, Peloponnesius.**



penalty, poena, supplicium.  
 penny, *use* tantulum, tantillum.  
 people, homines, *often omitted*; (*common*) plebs; populus, gens.  
 perceive, intellegere, sentire, animadvertere, cernere, perspicere.  
 perch, devolare.  
 perchance, forte.  
 perform, fungi.  
 perhaps, fortasse, forsitan, forte.  
 Pericles, Pericles.  
 peril, periculum.  
 period, tempus.  
 Peripatetic, Peripateticus.  
 perish, perire, interire, exstingui.  
 permission, *use* voluntas; give, permittere.  
 permit, permittere, sinere; licere.  
 perpetual, perpetuus.  
 Perseus, Perseus.  
 persevere, perseverare.  
 Persia, Persia.  
 Persian, Persicus, Persa.  
 Persians, Persae.  
 persist, perseverare, instare.  
 person, homo; in, coram, ipse  
 perspicacious, perspicax.  
 persuade, suadere, persuadere; be persuaded, persuasum habere.  
 pervade, pervadere.  
 perverseness, improbitas.  
 pestilential, pestiferus; region, pestilentialia.  
 Petelia, Petelia.  
 Peter, Petrus.  
 petition, postulatio.  
 petty, minutus.  
 Phaedria, Phaedria.  
 Pherecydes, Pherecydes.  
 Philip, Philippus.  
 Philistus, Philistus.  
 philosopher, philosophus.  
 philosophy, philosophia,

phrase, locutio; *often omitted*.  
 physician, medicus.  
 pick up, excipere.  
 picket, statio.  
 pierce, confodere.  
 pillow, pulvinum.  
 pilot, be, gubernare.  
 piracy, piratica.  
 pirate, pirata.  
 Piso, Piso.  
 pitch (*camp*), ponere, locare.  
 place, locus.  
 plague, (*s.*) pestis; (*v.*) premere.  
 plain, campus.  
 plan, consilium.  
 plate, lamina.  
 Plato, Plato.  
 play, fabula; play-book, fabula.  
 plead, dicere, deprecari.  
 pleasant, suavis, iucundus.  
 please, placere.  
 pleasing, iucundus, gratus.  
 pleasure, voluptas; have, delectari.  
 pledge, pignus.  
 plots, insidiae; lay, insidiari.  
 plow, arare; around, circumarare.  
 pluck, vellere; out, evellere; up, tollere.  
 plunder, spoliare, praedari.  
 plunge (*sword*), deferre.  
 poem, carmen, poema.  
 poet, poeta.  
 poignant, gravis.  
 point, mucro.  
 poison, venenum.  
 polished, cultus, expolitus.  
 Pollio, Pollio.  
 ponder, pensare.  
 poor, pauper, tenuis; fellow, pauper.  
 popular, popularis, gratus.  
 popularity, gratia.  
 populous, celebr.  
 Porsena, Porsena,

portentous, *may sometimes be expressed by* quantus.

position, locus, status; **high** (= *office*), dignitas, magistratus.

possess, possidere, habere, tenere; one's self of, potiri.

possession, possessio; **get**, potiri, adipisci; **have**, tenere; **take**, occupare, sumere.

possible, to be, *use* posse.

post, collocare.

posterity, posteritas.

Postumus, Postumus.

potent, how, quantus.

potion, medicamentum.

pour out, fundere.

poverty, paupertas; **be in**, egere.

power, potestas, potentia; vis; (*military*) imperium; **have**, posse.

powerful, potens, validus.

practical, utilis.

practice, usus.

practise highway robbery, latrocinari.

Praeneste, Praeneste.

praetor, praetor.

praise, (*s.*) laus, laudatio; (*v.*) laudare.

pray, precari.

preach, canere.

precede, praecedere, ante esse.

precedent, exemplum.

preceding, superior.

precept, praeceptum.

prefect, praefectus.

prefer, malle, praeferre, praeponere, antepondere.

preferable, potior.

preferment, honor.

preparations, make, parare.

prepare, prepare for, parare, praeparare; **prepared**, paratus.

prescribe, constituere, prescribere.

presence of, in the, *use* apud.

present, (*adj.*) hic, praesens; **be**, adesse; (*s.*) donum; (*v.*) donare.

presently, mox.

preservation, conservatio.

preserve, conservare, servare.

preserver, conservator.

preside, praesidere.

press forward, contendere.

pretend, simulare.

prevail, vincere, expugnare; valere.

prevent, impedire, prohibere, officere.

previous day, on the, pridie.

prey, praeda; of (*adj.*), rapax.

priest, pontifex, sacerdos.

prince, princeps.

prison, carcer.

prisoner, captus, captivus.

private, privatus, familiaris; **soldier**, manipularis, miles.

privilege, privilegium.

privy, conscius.

proceed, pergere.

procession, agmen.

proconsul, proconsul.

procure, nancisci.

produce (= *bring*), afferre.

profane, profanus.

profess, profiteri.

progress, cursus, celeritas; **rapid**, celeritas.

project, cogitare.

prolix, longus.

prolong, trahere, protrahere, prorogare.

promise, (*s.*) promissum; (*v.*) polliceri, promittere; **make**, promittere.

proof, testimonium; (= *type*) specimen.

proper, legitimus, iustus, rectus; **properly**, also probe.

property, bona.

proposal, propositum.

**propose**, proponere; **to one's self**, intendere.

**proscribe**, proscribere.

**prosperity**, res bonae, res prosperae, res secundae.

**protect**, arcere, tueri, protegere.

**protection**, salus, praesidium.

**protest**, testari.

**prove**, demonstrare, probare, ostendere.

**provide**, comparare, providere.

**provided only**, modo.

**providence**, providentia.

**province**, provincia.

**provisions**, frumentum, commeatus.

**provoke**, provocare.

**prudence**, prudentia.

**prudent**, prudens; **prudently**, prudenter.

**Prusias**, Prusias.

**public**, (s.) populus; (*adj.*) publicus; **affairs**, res publica.

**publish**, edere; **be published**, foras prodire.

**pull**, trahere; **down**, destruere, demoliri; **off**, detrahere.

**Punic**, Poenus.

**punish**, punire, animadvertere, supplicio afficere; **be punished**, poenas dare.

**punishment**, poena, supplicium; **inflict**, punire.

**purchase**, emere.

**pure**, sanctus.

**purpose**, propositum; *often .es is to be used.*

**pursue**, sequi, persequi.

**pursuit**, studium.

**push**, (*war*) parare; **into**, impingere; **on**, (*intr.*) penetrare.

**put**, ponere; **above**, praeponere; **before**, praeferre; **down**, ponere, deponere; **off**, differre; **on**, sumere,

induere; **together**, conficere, conferre; **under**, subicere.

**putting together**, confectio.

**Pyrrhus**, Pyrrhus.

**Pythagoras**, Pythagoras.

## Q

**quaestor**, quaestor.

**qualification** (= *character*), ars.

**quarrel**, disceptatio.

**quarry**, lautumiae.

**quarter**, regio, locus; *also use adverb.*

**queen**, regina.

**quickly**, cito, celeriter.

**quiet**, (*adj.*) quietus; (*v.*) sedare;

**grow**, quiescere; **keep**, quiescere, silere, tacere, reticere; **make**, sedare;

**quietly**, quiete.

**Quintilian**, Quintilianus.

**Quintus**, Q., Quintus.

**quit**, egredi, relinquere.

**quiver with excitement**, trepidare.

**quoth**, inquam.

## R

**rabble**, vulgus.

**race**, genus, gens.

**rage**, ira.

**rainstorm**, imber.

**raise**, tollere, ferre, efferre; **siege**, omittere.

**rampart**, vallum, agger.

**rank**, nobilitas, dignitas.

**rapidity**, celeritas.

**rare**, rarus, singularis; **rarely**, raro.

**rascal**, homo nequam.

**rash undertaking**, temere suscepta res; **rashly**, temere.

**rather**, magis, potius.

**ravage**, populari, vastare.

**raw**, crudus; (= *fresh*) novus.

**reach**, advenire, pervenire, venire;

- attinere, attingere, consequi; **after**, appetere.  
**read**, legere; **out**, recitare; **through**, perlegere.  
**readily**, facile, cito.  
**ready**, paratus, expeditus; **be ready to help**, praesto esse; **get**, parare; **get one's self**, se comparare.  
**reality**, in, re vera.  
**really**, re vera, hercule.  
**reap**, metere.  
**rear**, tergum.  
**rearing**, educatio.  
**reason**, ratio; causa.  
**rebel**, deficere.  
**rebuke**, castigare.  
**recall**, revocare; agnoscere; (*features*) agnoscere.  
**receive**, accipere, recipere, excipere, suscipere.  
**recent**, recens; **recently**, nuper.  
**recline**, recumbere.  
**recognize**, noscere, cognoscere.  
**recommendation**, commendatio; of (*adj.*), commendaticius.  
**reconcile**, conciliare; **be reconciled**, in gratiam redire.  
**reconnoitre**, circumspectare, speculari.  
**record**, put on, litteris mandare.  
**recount**, memorare; renumerare.  
**recover**, recuperare, recipere.  
**recreant**, be, prodere.  
**reduce**, redigere, revocare.  
**refer**, deferre, referre.  
**reflect**, cogitare.  
**refrain**, abstinere, sibi temperare, procul esse.  
**refuge**, perfugium, receptum; **take**, confugere; **place of**, perfugium, locus ad fugam.  
**refuse**, recusare, negare; **refuse to have**, repudiare.  
**regard**, aestimare, ducere, habere, arbitrari; **to have regard**, vereri; **with regard to**, de; (= *love*) deligere.  
**regiment**, agmen.  
**region**, regio, locus, ager.  
**regret**, dolere, paenitere.  
**regular**, use ars, or sometimes iustus.  
**regulator**, moderator.  
**Regulus**, Regulus.  
**reign**, (*v.*) regnare; (*s.*) regnum.  
**rein**, (*s.*) habena; (*v.*) **in**, sustinere.  
**reinforcement**, auxilium.  
**rejoice**, gaudere, laetari.  
**relate**, dicere, memorare, referre.  
**relation**, status.  
**relax**, cessare.  
**release**, laxare.  
**relegate**, relegare.  
**relieve**, levare, liberare.  
**relinquish**, relinquere.  
**rely**, confidere, fidere.  
**remain**, manere, remanere, permanere; superesse.  
**remark**, (*s.*) dictum; (*v.*) dicere; **make counter**, contra disputare.  
**remedy**, medicina, remedium; **employ**, mederi.  
**remember**, meminisse.  
**remind**, monere, admonere.  
**remit**, remittere.  
**remove**, amovere, removere, auferre, tollere.  
**rend**, scindere.  
**render**, reddere.  
**renew**, renovare, redintegrare, reparare.  
**renown**, gloria.  
**renowned**, clarus.  
**repay**, reddere.  
**repeatedly**, identidem.  
**repel**, propulsare.  
**reply**, respondere.  
**report**, (*v.*) profiteri, deferre, renuntiare; denuntiare; (*s.*) fama.



**representative**, legatus.  
**reprimand**, increpare.  
**repudiate**, repudiare.  
**repulse**, repellere.  
**reputable**, honestus.  
**reputation**, fama, laus.  
**request**, orare.  
**require**, quaerere; cogere.  
**rescue**, liberare.  
**resemble**, similem esse.  
**resentment**, dolor.  
**reserve**, servare, reservare; relin-  
 quere.  
**resign**, deponere; se abdicare.  
**resist**, resistere, arcere.  
**resolve**, statuere, constituere, decer-  
 nere; placere.  
**resources**, opes.  
**respect**, (s.) genus, res; (v.) vereri,  
 respicere; **respected**, ornatus.  
**respective**, *use* suum quisque.  
**response**, responsum.  
**rest**, (adj.) ceteri, reliquus; (s.) quies;  
 (v.) quiescere.  
**restore**, reficere, restituere, reddere.  
**restrain**, retinere, attinere, temperare.  
**result**, eventus, eventum.  
**retain**, asservare, retinere.  
**retard**, morari.  
**retire**, regredi, cedere.  
**retort**, referre.  
**retreat**, perfugium.  
**return**, (s.) reditus; (v.) redire, reverti;  
 (= *give back*) reddere.  
**reveal** (= *relate*), narrare.  
**reverence**, colere.  
**reverse**, detrimentum, incommodum,  
 adversa pugna.  
**revive**, (= *repeat*) repetere; (= *renew*)  
 excitare.  
**revolt**, deficere.  
**revolution**, res novae.  
**revolutionist**, malus *is sufficient*.

**reward**, praemium.  
**rewrite**, rescribere.  
**Rhine**, Rhenus.  
**Rhodes**, Rhodos.  
**rich**, dives, locuples, opulentus; (*of*  
*dishes*) opimus.  
**rid, get rid of**, tollere e medio, ponere.  
**ridicule**, deridere.  
**ridiculous**, ridiculus.  
**right**, (adj.) iustus, aequus, fas; *some-*  
*times* rectus; (*of direction*) dexter;  
**hand**, dextera; **it is**, oportet; **deem**,  
 videri.  
**right** (s.), ius; **rightly**, iure.  
**rigor**, severitas.  
**ring**, anulus.  
**riotous**, turbidus.  
**river**, flumen, fluvius, amnis.  
**road**, via, iter.  
**roam**, vagari.  
**rob**, rapere, orbare, volare.  
**robber**, latro, praedo.  
**rod**, virga.  
**rôle**, persona.  
**Roman**, Romanus.  
**Rome**, Roma.  
**Romulus**, Romulus.  
**Roscius**, Roscius.  
**rouse**, incitare, hortari; incendere.  
**rout**, fundere.  
**rower**, remex.  
**royal**, regius.  
**ruffled**, peturbatus.  
**ruin**, (s.) interitus; (v.) perdere.  
**ruinous**, exitiosus.  
**rule**, (s.) imperium; (v.) regnare, admi-  
 nistrare.  
**ruler**, moderator, rector.  
**Rullus**, Rullus.  
**rumor**, fama; rumor.  
**run**, currere, fugere; **against**, incur-  
 rere; **out**, excurrere; **through**  
 (trans.), transfodere.

rush forth, se eicere; up, advolare.  
Rutilius, Rutilius.

## S

Sabine, Sabinus.  
sack, direptio.  
sacred, sacer.  
sacrifice, (s.) sacrificium; (v.) immolare, sacrificare, mactare.  
safe, securus, incolumis, tutus.  
safety, salus; in, salvo capite.  
Saguntines, Saguntini.  
Saguntum, Saguntum.  
sail, navigare, vehi.  
sailor, nauta.  
sake of, for, propter, causa.  
Salamis, of, Salaminus.  
sally, eruptio, excursio.  
salutary, salutaris.  
salute, salutare.  
salvation, salus.  
same, idem; at the same time, *often* simul; in the same way, *similiter*.  
Samnites, Samnites.  
sanctuary, cella, templum.  
Sardinian, Sardus.  
satisfaction, demand, res repetere.  
savage, ferox; -temper, ferocitas.  
save, servare, reservare; (*citadel*) libere.  
say, dicere, loqui.  
saying, dictum.  
Scaevola, Scaevola.  
scantiness, exiguitas.  
scanty, exiguus.  
scarcely, vix; scarcely any one, nemo fere.  
scatter, dissipare.  
Scaurus, Scaurus.  
scholar, discipulus.  
school, schola.  
science, scientia.

scimitar, acinaces.  
Scipio, Scipio.  
scoundrel, improbus; homo *is often* sufficient.  
scout, (= *despise*) aspernari.  
scream, vociferare.  
scrupulously, diligenter.  
scuttle, perforare.  
Scythian, Scythia.  
sea, mare; -coast, ora maritima; -farer, nauta; -fight, naumachia; hold a sea-fight, naumachiam committere.  
seal, (s.) sigillum; (v.) sigillum imponere.  
season, tempus.  
seat, (s.) domicilium; (v.) ponere.  
secession, secessio.  
seclusion, secessus.  
second, alter, secundus; time, iterum.  
secret, arcanus, secretus.  
secretly, clam.  
section, regio.  
secular, saecularis.  
security, vades.  
see, videre, cernere, conspiciere, (*a show*) spectare; clearly, perspicere; see to it, videre.  
seek, petere, repetere, quaerere; out, after, petere, expetere.  
seem, videri.  
seer, vates.  
seize, capere, rapere; occupare, prehendere; corripere.  
select, legere, eligere.  
self, ipse.  
self-restraint, continentia, abstinencia.  
seller, venditor.  
senate, senatus; -house, curia.  
senator, senator; choose, legere in senatum.  
send, mittere; ahead, praemittere;

**away**, dimittere; **for**, arcessere, accire; **out**, emittere.  
**sense**, prudentia; **sense of honor**, honestum; **come to senses**, resipiscere.  
**sensible**, prudens.  
**sentry**, vigil.  
**separate**, dirimere, separare.  
**serious**, gravis, serius; **seriously**, serio.  
**sermon**, praeceptum.  
**servant**, servus, puer; **be**, servire.  
**serve**, servire; (*of a soldier*) militare.  
**service**, opera, meritum; **loyal**, obsequium.  
**serviceable**, utilis; **be**, usui esse.  
**servitude**, servitus.  
**Sestius**, Sestius.  
**set**, ponere; **before**, ponere, proponere; **down**, ponere, statuere; **forth**, exponere, demonstrare; **out**, proficisci, sortiri; **up**, ponere.  
**settle**, collocare, conficere; diiudicare.  
**seven**, septem; **seventh**, septimus.  
**seventy**, septuaginta.  
**several**, aliquot.  
**severe**, gravis; **less**, levior; **severely**, graviter.  
**severity**, gravitas.  
**shades**, inferi.  
**shadow**, umbra.  
**shameful**, turpis.  
**shapely**, formosus.  
**share**, partiri, communicare.  
**sharer**, socius.  
**shatter**, diminuere.  
**sheep**, ovis, pecus.  
**shepherd**, pastor, opilio.  
**shield**, scutum, clipeus.  
**ship**, navis, navigium.  
**shirt**, tunica interior.  
**shock**, offendere.  
**shoot**, conicere.

**shore**, litus.  
**short**, brevis; **time**, paulisper, parumper.  
**shout**, clamare; **in protest**, reclamare.  
**show**, (s.) spectaculum; **give, exhibit**, spectaculum edere; (v.) praebere, significare, confirmare; docere, ostendere; prae se ferre; **gratitude**, (*by action*) referre; **itself**, exsistere.  
**shrewdness**, prudentia.  
**shut**, operire, ocludere.  
**Sicily**, Sicilia.  
**sick**, aeger, aegrotus; **be**, aegrotare.  
**sickness**, aegrotatio, morbus.  
**Sicyon**, Sicyon; **of**, Sicyonius.  
**side**, latus, pars; (= *party*) partes; **on the one side**, hinc; **at one's side**, use consessor.  
**siege**, obsidio, oppugnatio; **begin**, use verbs; **endure**, oppugnari; **lay**, oppugnare; **raise**, omittere obsidionem.  
**siege-works**, munitiones.  
**sight**, conspectus; **catch**, aspicere, conspiciere.  
**sign**, signare.  
**signal**, signum.  
**silence**, silentium; **in**, tacitus.  
**silent**, tacitus; **be, keep**, tacere, silere.  
**silliness**, insulsitas, ineptia.  
**silly**, ineptus, insulsus; (*note*) litterae insulse scriptae; **be**, desipere.  
**silver**, (*adj.*) argenteus; (s.) argentum.  
**simple**, simplex.  
**simpleton**, stultus.  
**sin**, peccatum, impietas; **commit**, use peccare.  
**since**, quod, quia, etc.  
**sing**, cantare.  
**singer**, cantor.  
**singular**, singularis.  
**sister**, soror.  
**sit, sit still**, sedere.  
**situated**, situs, positus.

situation, situs; fortuna.

six, sex.

sixty, sexaginta.

skill, peritia, prudentia, ars.

skilled, peritus.

sky, caelum.

slaughter, (v.) interficere.

slave, servus, mancipium; **be a**, servire.

slavery, servitus.

slay, caedere, interficere, necare.

sleep, (s.) somnus; (v.) dormire, incubare.

slight, parvus, exiguus; **slightly**, leviter.

slip away, dilabi, elabi; **out**, elabi.

slough, vorago.

small, parvus, modicus, humilis, minutus.

smite, percutere.

snake, anguis, serpens.

snatch, rapere; **untimely**, praeripere.

sneeringly, per iocum.

snow, nix.

**so**, tam, sic, ita, adeo, itaque; **so great**,

**so much**, tantus; **and so**, itaque;

**so . . . as**, **so much . . . as**, tam . . .

quam; **so many**, tot.

Socrates, Socrates.

sofa, lectulus.

soil, solum.

solace, solatium.

soldier, miles.

solecism, soloecismus.

solitude, solitudo.

Solon, Solon.

**some**, aliquis, quis, nonnullus; quidam;

**-day**, aliquando; **-distance**, aliquan-

**-tisper**; **-thing**, aliquid, quid; **-times**,

aliquando, interim; **-what**, nonnihil,

aliquantum; **-where**, nescio quo;

**-body or other**, nescio quis; **-how**

**or other**, nescio quo modo; **-time**

**or other**, nescio quando, aliquando.

**son**, filius; **son-in-law**, gener.

**song**, cantus, carmen.

**soon**, cito, celeriter, statim; paulo; mox.

**soothe**, mulcere.

**sorry**, one is, paenitet.

**sort**, of what, qualis.

**soul**, animus.

**sovereignty**, summa imperii.

**sow**, serere, sementem facere.

**space**, spatium.

**Spain**, Hispania.

**spare**, parcere.

**speak**, dicere, loqui.

**spear**, hasta, telum.

**special**, praecipuus.

**spectacle**, spectaculum.

**spectator**, spectator.

**speech**, oratio, eloquentia; **make**, orationem habere.

**speed**, celeritas.

**speedily**, cito, confestim, celeriter, propere.

**spend**, impendere, erogare; ponere.

**spirit**, animus; **spirits**, *also* animi.

**spoil**, **make**, spoliare.

**spot**, on the, ilico, extemplo.

**spring**, oriri; **up**, *also* exsistere.

**sprinkle**, aspergere; **upon**, inspergere.

**spy out**, scrutari.

**stab**, percutere, confodere.

**stadium**, stadium.

**staff** (*of a general*), consilium.

**stain**, aspergere.

**stained**, maculosus.

**stand**, stare, esse, se habere; **stand in way**, obstare; **take stand**, consistere.

**start**, proficisci.

**starvation**, inedia.

**state**, (s.) res publica, civitas; (= *condition*) condicio, status; (v.) tradere.



dicere, explicare; **of the state**, publicus; **by the state**, publice.

**statement**, exuntiatio.

**station**, locus.

**statue**, statua, signum.

**stature**, statura.

**stay**, manere, residere, quiescere.

**stead, in**, pro.

**steady**, assiduus.

**steel**, *use* ferrum.

**steep**, (*v.*) inficere.

**step out**, progredi.

**Stephanus**, Stephanus.

**stick**, haerere.

**still**, (*adv.*) etiam, etiamtum, adhuc; tamen, nihilominus.

**stipulate**, paeisei; **be stipulated**, convenire.

**stir**, se movere; **up**, incitare.

**Stoic**, Stoicus.

**stone**, saxum, lapis.

**stop**, cessare, consistere.

**storehouse**, thesaurus.

**storm**, tempestas, procella; (= *siege*) expugnatio; **take by**, expugnare.

**story**, fabula, narratio, narratiuncula; *often res.*

**straits**, angustiae.

**strange**, externus.

**stratagem**, dolus.

**street**, via.

**strength**, vis, vires; *also* robur.

**strengthen**, stabilire.

**strife**, certamen, dissensio.

**strike**, ferire; **out for**, petere.

**strip**, nudare.

**strive**, contendere, niti, coniti.

**strong**, validus.

**struggle**, (*s.*) certamen; (*v.*) luctari.

**study**, (*s.*) studium; (*v.*) studere.

**stumble**, offendere, incidere.

**stupidity**, stultitia.

**style**, oratio, genus dicendi.

**subdue**, domare, superare.

**subject**, (*adj.*) subiectus; (*v.*) subicere.

**subjugate**, subigere, domare, subiugare.

**Sublician**, Sublicius.

**subsequently**, subinde.

**substitute**, subicere.

**subvert**, subvertere.

**succeed**, succedere, imperio succedere.

**success**, successus.

**successful**, secundus, felix.

**successor, be, in** locum alicuius succedere.

**succor**, succurrere.

**succumb**, succumbere.

**such**, (*of quality*) talis, is, ille; **such . . . as**, talis . . . qualis; (*of extent*) tantus, tantum *with gen.*, ita, adeo.

**sudden**, necopinatus, subitus, repentinus.

**suddenly**, subito, repente.

**Suetonius**, Suetonius.

**suffer**, pati, condolere, laborare, accipere; (= *permit*) pati, permittere, sinere.

**suffering**, aegritudo.

**sufficient**, satis; **sufficiently**, satis.

**suicide, commit**, mortem sibi consciscere.

**suit**, convenire.

**suitable**, idoneus.

**suite**, consilium.

**Sulla**, Sulla.

**Sulpicius**, Sulpicius.

**summer**, aestas.

**summon**, appellare, advocare, excitare, evocare.

**sun**, sol.

**sunset**, solis occasum.

**superabundance**, abundantia.

**superfluous**, supervacuum.

**support**, sustinere, subire.

support, (*enthusiastic*) studium; vote in, suffragari.

suppose, opinari, arbitrari; sperare.

supremacy, dominatus.

sure, be, *use* scire.

surname, cognomen.

surpass, praestare, superare, antecedere.

surprise, opprimere.

surrender, (*s.*) deditio; (*v.*) se dedere, se permittere, se tradere.

surround, circumdare, cingere, circumvenire, circumsistere.

survive, superstitem esse, superesse.

suspect, suspicari, suspicere.

suspicion, suspicio; **have**, suspicari.

sustain, sustinere.

swallow, hirundo.

swarm, examen; *often* vis.

sway, imperium.

swear, iurare.

sweet, dulcis.

swift, celer.

swim, nare; **across**, tranare.

sword, gladius, ferrum; *in contrasts*, ferrum.

syllable, syllaba.

Syphax, Syphax.

Syracusan, Syracusanus.

Syracuse, Syracusae.

Syria, Syria.

## T

tablet, tabula.

take, sumere, ducere, deducere, perdere, tollere; **away**, auferre, adimere, detrahare, tollere; **out**, abducere; **up**, capere, perducere, (*arms*) movere; **up again**, resumere; (*side, course*) uti, sequi; (*meat*) adhibere; **take possession of**, potiri, capere; **take stand**, consistere; **city**, capere, expugnare; **prisoner**, capere.

talent, talentum.

talk, loqui.

tame, domare.

tardily, tarde.

Tarentine, Tarentinus.

Tarquinius, Tarquinius.

Tarracina, Tarracina.

tarry, morari, manere.

task, negotium.

teach, docere, profiteri.

tear, lacrima; **with tears**, lacrimans.

tear down, diruere.

tedious, longus.

tell, dicere, narrare, enarrare, indicare prodere, referre.

temple, templum.

tempt, sollicitare.

ten, decem; **ten each**, deni.

tender, tener.

Tennyson, Tennysonius.

tent, tabernaculum.

Terentius, Terentius.

terms, condiciones; **on intimate**, familiariter.

terrible, atrox.

terrified, territus, perterritus, expavescens.

terror, terror, pavor.

test, experimentum.

testimony, testimonium; **give**, dicere testimonium.

than, quam.

thank, gratias agere.

thankless, ingratus.

that, is, ille, iste; ut, quod, quin, *object clause*.

the . . . the, quo . . . eo, quanto . . . tanto.

theatre, theatrum.

their, suus, eorum.

Themistocles, Themistocles.

then, tum.

therefore, igitur.

Thermopylae, Thermopylae.

thing, res, *or neut. pron.*

think, putare, reri, cogitare; censere, ducere; aestimare, existimare, arbitrari; sentire, habere; **best**, good, videri, placet; **of**, cogitare; **out**, excogitare.

third, tertius.

thirsty, be, sitire.

thirty, triginta.

this, is, hic.

thought, cogitatio.

thousand, mille; *pl.*, milia.

Thrace, Thracia.

Thracians, Thraces.

threaten, minari; impendere, imminere, portendi.

three, tres; **-days**, triduum; **-times**, ter; **-hundredth**, tricentesimus.

threshold, limen.

throat, fauces, guttur.

throne, imperium; *often* regnum.

throw, iacere; **away**, abicere, proicere.

thrust upon, ingerere; **thrust** (*sword*), adigere.

Thucydides, Thucydides.

Tiber, Tiberis.

tidings, nuntius; **bring**, nuntiare.

tie (*of relationship*), necessitudo.

tiger, tigris.

time, tempus, otium; **at the right**, in tempore; **at that**, tum; **in time of**, in; **up to this**, adhuc.

timid, timidus.

Titan, Titan.

to, ad, in.

to-day, hodie.

toil, (*s.*) labor; (*v.*) laborare.

too, nimis, oppido; (= *also*) una, etiam, quoque.

top, cacumen, summus.

torch, taeda.

torment, cruciare.

torpid, lie, torpere.

Torquatus, Torquatus.

torture, (*s.*) cruciatus, tormentum; (*v.*) cruciare, conficere.

toward, adversus, in . . . versus.

tower, turris.

town, oppidum, urbs.

trace, vestigium; **no**, nihil.

track out, investigare.

trade, mercatura.

train, docere, instituere.

traitor, proditor.

transcend, excedere.

transport, adducere, traducere.

travel abroad, peregrinari.

treason, patriae parricidium, impietas.

treasury, aerarium, gaza.

treat, tractare, uti.

treatise, commentarius.

treatment, curatio; **in**, in curando.

treaty, foedus.

Trebellius, Trebellius.

tree, arbor.

trial, make, experiri.

tribe, genus, tribus, gens.

tribune, tribunus.

trifle, res levissima.

trifling, levis; *sometimes* quantuluscumque.

trireme, triremis.

triumph, (*s.*) triumphus; (*v.*) triumphare.

triumvir, triumvir.

troops, copiae; *often simply poss. pron.*

trouble, (*s.*) molestia, negotium; (*v.*) turbare; **sorely**, perturbare.

troublesome, molestus.

truce, indutiae.

true, verus; **truly**, vere.

trust, (*s.*) fides, fiducia; (*v.*) confidere credere.

trustiness, fides.

truth, veritas, verum.

try, conari, niti; tentare, contendere;  
(*plan*) uti; (*fortune*) experiri.

Tuditanus, Tuditanus.

tumult, tumultus.

turbulent, turbulentus.

turn, vertere, flectere, se commovere,  
se convertere; (= *change*) convertere;

away, avertere; back, tergum dare  
or vertere, se avertere; out, eicere;

accidere, contingere, evenire, esse;

out false, in falsum convertere; over,  
tradere.

Turpio, Turpio.

Tusculan, Tusculanus.

tutor, praeceptor.

twenty, viginti.

two, duo.

tyranny, tyrannis.

tyrant, tyrannus.

Tyre, Tyros.

Tyrian, Tyrius.

## U

unable, be, non posse.

unaccustomed, insuetus.

unacquainted, imperitus, expers.

unanimously, omnium suffragiis.

unarmed, inermis.

unavailing, cassus.

unbecoming, foedus.

unbidden, iniussus.

unblemished, sanctus.

unbounded, infinitus.

unceasing, perpetuus.

uncertain, incertus.

uncle, avunculus, patruus.

under, sub.

undergo, ferre, pati, capere.

understand, intellegere, tenere.

undertake, suscipere, adoriri, sustinere.

undertaking, conatum, res suscepta.

unequaled, singularis.

unexampled, sine exemplo.

unexpected, unsuspecting, inopina-  
tus.

unfavorable, iniquus.

unfortunate, miser.

unfriendly, inimicus.

unhappy, infelix.

unharmed, incolumis.

unheard, causa indicta.

unheard of, inauditum.

unite, coniungere, colligere.

unjust, iniustus, iniquus; unjustly, in-  
iuste, inique.

unknown, ignotus.

unless, nisi, praeter.

unlike, dissimilis.

unlucky, (*adj.*) infelix; (*adv.*) male.

unoccupied, liber.

unprincipled, improbus.

unroll, replicare.

unterrified, interritus.

until, dum, donec; ad.

untimely, immaturus.

untouched, intactus.

unwilling, be, nolle.

unworthy, indignus.

upright, rectus.

urge, adducere, impellere, admonere,  
censere.

use, (*s.*) usus; opus; make, uti; (*v.*) uti;  
up, abuti.

used, to be, solere.

useful, utilis.

useless, inutilis.

usual, usitatus, sollemnis; usually, *use*  
solere.

Utica, Utica.

utter, eloqui.

## V

vain, inanis; in, nequiquam, frustra.

Valerius, Valerius.



**valiant**, impiger, fortis.  
**valid**, iustus.  
**valor**, virtus.  
**valuable**, pretiosus.  
**value**, (s.) pretium, utilitas; *often omitted*; (v.) aestimare, ducere.  
**vanquish**, devincere, vincere.  
**various**, varius, diversus.  
**varlet**, homo.  
**Varro**, Varro.  
**vast**, ingens.  
**Veii**, Veii.  
**Velleius**, Velleius.  
**vengeance**, ultio; **take**, ulcisci.  
**venture**, audere.  
**Vergil**, Vergilius.  
**Verginius**, Verginius.  
**Verres**, Verres.  
**verse**, versus.  
**very**, admodum, oppido, valde.  
**vessel**, vas; (= *ship*) navis.  
**vestibule**, vestibulum.  
**Vibius**, Vibius.  
**vice**, vitium.  
**vicious**, vitiosus.  
**victim**, victima.  
**victor**, victorious, victor; **be**, vincere.  
**victory**, victoria; **gain**, *often* vincere.  
**view**, conspectus; **have**, **take**, sentire, putare.  
**vigilance**, vigilantia.  
**village**, vicus.  
**violence**, vis, violentia.  
**violent**, violens, turbidus.  
**virtue**, virtus.  
**vision**, visus.  
**visit with**, (*punishment*) afficere.  
**vitals**, viscera.  
**Vitellius**, Vitellius.  
**voice**, vox.  
**Volscians**, Volsci.  
**volume**, tomus, volumen.

**voluntary**, voluntarius.  
**vow**, vovere, devovere.

## W

**wage**, gerere, inferre.  
**wake**, expergefacere, excitare.  
**wailing**, eiulatus.  
**waist**, medius.  
**wait**, expectare, opperiri; **for**, expectare.  
**walk**, ambulare, incedere.  
**wall**, murus, moenia.  
**wander**, errare.  
**wane**, senescere.  
**want**, (s.) inopia; (v.) cupere, velle, desiderare; **not**, nolle.  
**war**, bellum; **make**, bellum inferre.  
**ward off**, avertere, arcere, defendere, pellere, prohibere.  
**warlike**, bellicus, bellicosus.  
**warn**, monere, admonere, commonere, denuntiare.  
**waste**, terere; **lay waste**, vastare.  
**watch**, (s.) vigilia; (v.) vigilare, observare.  
**water**, aqua; **-supply**, aqua.  
**watered**, aquosus.  
**wavering**, anceps.  
**way**, modus; iter, via; **make**, se conferre; **give**, inclinare; **such a**, **this**, ita.  
**ways**, instituta.  
**weak**, invalidus, debilis.  
**weakness**, infirmitas; vitium.  
**weal**, salus.  
**wealth**, divitiae.  
**wealthy**, locuples.  
**weapon**, ferrum, telum.  
**wear out**, fatigare.  
**weep**, lacrimare, flere.  
**weeping**, fletus.  
**weigh**, pendere, pensare; perpendere.

**weight, have,** valere; **be of less,** levius esse.

**welcome,** gratus, optatus.

**welfare,** salus; **public,** res publica.

**well,** bene; **get,** convalescere.

**well-constituted,** bonus, bene constitutus, sanus.

**well-doing,** beneficentia.

**what,** quid, quod; (*adj.*) quis, qui; **-ever,** quisquis.

**when,** quando, cum, ubi; quo die.

**whence,** quo.

**whenever,** si quando, quandocumque.

**whereas,** autem; quod, cum.

**wherever,** quacumque.

**whether,** utrum, -ne, an; num;

**whether . . . or,** sive . . . sive.

**which,** qui, uter; **party,** utri.

**while,** a little, parumper.

**whither,** ubi, quo.

**whithersoever,** quocumque, quo.

**who,** quis, qui.

**whole,** totus, omnis.

**wholesome,** salubris.

**why,** cur, quare.

**wicked,** improbus, nefarius, impius.

**wickedness,** improbitas.

**wife,** uxor.

**will,** voluntas, arbitrium; testamentum  
*or* tabulae.

**willing, be,** velle; *often* libenter *with the verb.*

**willingly,** libenter.

**win,** allicere, conciliare; (= *obtain*)  
potiri; **over,** conciliare.

**wind,** ventus.

**wine,** vinum.

**winged,** volucer.

**winter,** (*adj.*) hibernus; (*s.*) hiems.

**winter-quarters,** hiberna.

**wipe out,** delere.

**wisdom,** sapientia, eruditio, consilium.

**wise,** sapiens; **wisely,** sapienter.

**wish,** (*s.*) voluntas; (*v.*) velle, optare.

**with,** cum; una.

**within,** intra.

**withdraw,** cedere, se recipere, decedere, secedere, recedere, se subtrahere, se conferre, abducere, reducere, retro reducere, concedere; *also* deserere.

**without** sine; **be,** carere; **from without,** extrinsecus.

**withstand,** sustinere.

**witness,** testis.

**woman,** mulier, femina.

**womanly,** muliebris.

**wonder,** *use* mirum.

**wonder (at),** mirari, admirari; **wonder very much,** demirari.

**wonderful,** mirabilis.

**wont,** mos, consuetudo; **be,** solere.

**word,** vox, verbum; **few words,** *often* pauca; **of honor,** fides; **bring,** nuntiare; **bring back,** renuntiare.

**work,** (*s.*) opus, opera; (*v.*) laborare; **up,** (*intr.*) eniti.

**world,** mundus, orbis terrarum; **in world,** (*with superl.*) omit.

**worry, be worried,** angi.

**worse, be,** peius agere, graviolem esse.

**worship,** colere.

**worth,** virtus.

**worthy,** dignus.

**wound,** vulnus.

**wreath,** corona.

**wretch,** miser.

**wretched,** miser.

**write,** scribere, litteras dare; **back,** rescribere.

**wrong,** iniuria; **-doing,** iniuria; **do,** iniuria afficere, peccare.

## X

**Xenophon,** Xenophon.

**Xerxes,** Xerxes.

## Y

year, annus.

yesterday, hesternus dies; of yesterday, hesternus.

yet, tamen; as yet, adhuc; not yet, nondum.

yield, cedere.

yoke, iugum.

you, tu.

young, (*adj.*) iuvenis; man, iuvenis,

adulescens; (*s.*) (*of animals*) suboles.

your, tuus, vester.

youth, adulescentia, iuventus; (= *young man*) iuvenis, adulescens.

## Z

Zeal, studium.

Zeno, Zeno.

Zopyrus, Zopyrus.

## SUMMARY OF THE SYNTACTICAL REFERENCES IN THE NOTES

**204.** The subject may be a substantive or a pronoun, or some other word, phrase, or clause used as a substantive.

N. 5.—In Latin the Plural of abstract substantives occurs more frequently than in English. Pluralizing abstract substantives often makes them concrete.

N. 6.—Other plural expressions are : *nives*, *snow (flakes)*; *ligna*, (*logs of*) *wood*; *carnes* (*pieces of*) *meat*, and the like.

**208.** 1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather are regularly used impersonally.

2. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally; so regularly of verbs which in the active are construed with the Dative.

**214.** The Passive voice denotes that the *subject receives the action* of the verb. The instrument is put in the Ablative, the Agent in the Ablative with **a** (**ab**).

R. 1.—Intransitive verbs of passive signification are construed as passives.

R. 2.—When the instrument is considered as an agent or the agent as an instrument the constructions are reversed.

**217.** Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally in the passive.

**218.** Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English; but when the reflexive relation is more general the passive (middle) is employed.

**219.** As the active is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the passive in its reflexive (middle) sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself.

**221.** Reciprocal relations ('*one another*') are expressed by **inter**, *among*, and the personal pronouns **nos**, **vos**, **se**.

**228.** The Present is sometimes used *in anticipation of the future*, chiefly in compound sentences.

**230.** The Present is used of actions *that are continued into the present*, especially with **iam**, **iam diu**, **iam dudum**. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

**233.** The Imperfect is used of *attempted* and *interrupted*, *intended* and *expected* actions (Imperfect of Endeavor). It is the tense of *Disappointment*, and, with the negative, of *Resistance to Pressure*.



N. 1.—The Imperfect as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English Imperfect and Historical Perfect coincide: hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

238. **Habeo** or **teneo**, *I hold, I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle passive, is not merely a circumlocution, but lays peculiar stress on the *maintenance of the result*.

244. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment*.

R. 1.—When the Perfect is used as a Present, the Future Perfect is used as a Future.

R. 2.—The Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Future Perfect.

R. 3.—The Future Perfect is frequently used in **volo**, **nolo**, **possum**, **licet**, **libet**, **placet**; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

R. 4.—The Future Perfect in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment: one action involves the other.

248. The periphrases **futurum esse** (more often **fore**) **ut**, **futurum fuisse ut**, with the Subjunctive, are very commonly used to take the place of the Future Infinitive Active. In the Passive they are more common than the Supine with **iri**.

252. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of a letter.

254. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality*.

R. 1.—The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally as facts; whereas our translation often *implies the failure to realize*.

R. 2.—The Imperfect as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: **debebam**, *I ought* (but do not); **poteras**, *you could* (but do not).

257. 1. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from 'may' and 'might' to 'must.' The negative is **non**.

2. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive.

258. The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person.

271. 2. **Cave** and **cave** (**caveto**) **ne**, *beware lest*, with the Subjunctive, and **noli**, *be unwilling*, with the Infinitive, are circumlocutions for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive).

281. 1. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous* action.

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents *prior* action.

N.—**Memini**, *I remember*, when used of *personal experience*, commonly takes the Present Infinitive. So also rarely **memoria teneo**, **recordor**, *I remember*, and **fugit me**, *I do not remember*. When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction (past) is followed.

291. 1. When the attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive ; otherwise, in classical Latin ordinarily after it.

R. 1.—Variation in the position of the adjective often causes variation in the meaning of the word.

R. 2.—Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then *generally* precede their substantives.

294. The ordinals are used more often in Latin than in English ; sometimes also for the cardinals with a carelessness that gives rise to ambiguity.

296. The Comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with **quam**, *than*, or in the Ablative.

R. 4.—**Quam** is often omitted after **plus**, **amplius**, *more*, and **minus**, *less*, and the like, without affecting the construction.

297. The Standard of Comparison may be omitted when it can be supplied : 1, by the context ; 2, by the usual or proper standard ; 3, by the opposite.

298. Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with **quam pro** and the Ablative, or with **quam ut** or **quam qui** with the Subjunctive.

299. When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either **magis** and **quam** with the positive or a double comparative.

N. 1.—There is no distinction between these two expressions ; but the latter is later. The same rule applies to the adverb.

302. The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons.

303. The superlative is strengthened by **multo**, *much*, *large*, *by far* ; **vel**, *even* ; **unus**, **unus omnium**, *one above all others* ; **quam**—**potuit**, etc.

304. 1. The Personal Pronoun is usually omitted when it is the subject of a verb.

2. The Genitive forms **mei**, **tui**, **sui**, **nostri**, **vestri** are used mainly as *Objective* Genitives.

3. The Genitive forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used *partitively*.

305. **Hic**, *this*, refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean the speaker himself, the persons with whom the speaker identifies himself, the subject in hand, the current period of time, etc.

306. **Iste**, *that*, refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person*.

**307. Ille**, *that*, denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to **hic**, *this*; it may mean: that which has been previously mentioned, that which is well known, that which is to be recalled, that which is expected, etc.

R. 1.—**Hic** and **ille** are used together in contrasts.

**308. Is**, *that*, serves as the lacking pronoun of the Third Person, and furnishes the regular antecedent of the Relative.

R. 3.—**Is** does not represent a substantive before a Gen., as in the English *that of*. In Latin the substantive is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

**309.** The Reflexive Pronoun is used:

1. *Regularly* when reference is made to the *grammatical* subject. The subject may be indefinite or (occasionally) impersonal.

2. *Frequently* when reference is made to the *actual* subject.

3. *Regularly* as the complement of the Infinitive and its equivalents when a reflexive idea is involved; and with prepositions **erga**, **inter**, **propter**, **per**.

4. **Suus** is also used in prepositional phrases that are joined closely with substantives.

**315. Quis** (**qui**), fainter than **aliquis**, is used chiefly after **si**, **nisi**, **ne**, **num**, and in relative sentences.

N. 1.—**Aliquis** is used after **si**, etc., when there is stress; **si quis**, *if any*; **si aliquis**, *if some*; **si quid**, *if anything*; **si quidquam**, *if anything at all*.

**317. 1. Quisquam** and **ullus** are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions.

2. The negative of **quisquam** is **nemo**, **nihil**; the negative of **ullus** is **nullus**, which also takes the place of **nemo** in the Genitive and Ablative.

**318. 3. Quisque** combines readily with the reflexives **sui**, **sibi**, **se**, **suus** in their emphatic sense.

**319. Alter** and **alius** are both translated *other*, *another*, but **alter** refers to one of two, **alius** to diversity; **alteri—alteri**, *one party—another party* (already defined); **alii—alii**, *some—others*.

**325.** Any case may be attended by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Opposition, which differs from the ordinary Attribution or Opposition in translation only.

R. 6.—The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective.

R. 7.—**Primus**, *first*; **primum**, *for the first time*; **primo**, *at first*.

**331.** Verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **praeter**, **sub**, **subter**, **super**, and **trans**, which become transitive, take the Accusative.

R. 1.—If the simple verb is trans., it can take two Accusatives.



R. 2.—With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated.

R. 3.—Sometimes a difference of signification is caused by the addition of the preposition ; so with **adire**.

**333.** 1. Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantival notion that lies in the verb.

2. When the dependent word is of the same origin or kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative, and usually has the attribute.

**336.** The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without **per**, in answer to the question *how long* ?

R.—**Per** with the Accusative is frequently used like the Abl. of Time Within Which, especially with the negative.

**337.** Names of Towns and Small Islands, when used as limits of Motion Whither, are put in the Accusative.

R. 6.—Motion *to a place* embraces all the local designations.

**339.** Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and **celare**, *to conceal*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing.

N. 4.—**Discere** is the prose word for **doceri**, except that the past participle **doctus** is classical but rare.

**345.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive Verbs which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, *to, for, from*.

R. 1.—The Dative with verbs of Taking Away, Prohibiting, and the like, is mostly confined to poetry and later prose. The translation *from* is merely approximate, instead of *for*.

R. 2.—The translation *for* is nearer the Dat. than *to* ; but *for* (*in defence of*) is **pro**.

**346.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding.

N. 2.—**Cavere alicui**, *to take precautions for some one*, but **cavere aliquem** (also **de, ab aliquo**), *to take precautions against some one*.

**348.** A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

**349.** The Dative of Possessor is used with **esse**, which is then commonly translated by the verb *to have*.

R. 3.—Possession of qualities is expressed by **esse** with **in** and the Ablative, by **inesse** with the Dative, or with **in**, or by some other turn.

**350.** 1. The Person from whose point of view the action is observed or towards whom it is directed may be put in the Dative. A convenient but not exact translation is often the English possessive.



**353.** Noteworthy is the use of the Dative of Reference in combinations with participles, to give either the *local* or the *mental* point of view.

**356.** Certain verbs take the Dative of the Object For Which (to what end) and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom or To Whom.

R. 2.—The principal verbs construed with Dative For Which are *esse, dare, ducere, habere, vertere*.

**359.** Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative.

R. 1.—*Similis* is followed by the Genitive of the Personal Pronouns and of gods and men, otherwise usually by the Dative.

**360.** 1. The Genitive is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective. It is represented in English by (a) the Possessive case; (b) the Objective case with *of*; (c) substantives used as adjectives or in composition.

R. 1.—Other prepositions than *of* are not unfrequently used in English.

R. 2.—An abstract substantive with the Gen. is often to be translated as an attribute, while on the other hand the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract substantive with *of*.

2. The Genitive is employed chiefly as the complement of Substantives and Adjectives; occasionally as the complement of verbs.

**363.** When the substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into (1) Active or Subjective Genitive; (2) Passive or Objective Genitive.

R. 1.—The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively*. Hence to avoid ambiguity some other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for, toward, etc.*

**366.** The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates.

R. 1.—The Possession appears in a variety of forms and takes a variety of translations.

R. 2.—For the personal representative of a quality, the quality itself may be used sometimes with but little difference, and so sometimes the adjective, except when it is of the Third Declension.

**369.** The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of many words, but only in the Nominative and the Accusative.

R. 2.—Notice the phrase *nihil reliqui facere*: 1, *to leave nothing*; 2 (occasionally), *to leave nothing undone*.

**372.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives.

N. 2.—Substantival neuters with no idea of quantity were rarely followed by the Genitive in early and classical Latin, but the usage becomes common in the Silver age, particularly in *TACITUS*.

**380.** 1. Verbs of Rating take the Genitive of the General value, the Ablative of the Particular value.

2. Verbs of Buying take *tanti, quanti, pluris, and minoris*. The rest are put in the Ablative.

R.—*Bene emere, to buy cheap; male emere, to buy dear; so, too, melius, optime, peius, pessime.*

**385.** Place Where is expressed by the Ablative, as a rule with the Preposition *in*.

R. 1.—Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Ablative with *in* to designate the result of the motion.

**397.** The Ablative of Respect or Specification gives the Point From Which a thing is measured or treated.

**399.** The Ablative of Manner is used with the preposition *cum* when it has no Adjective; with or without *cum* when it has an Adjective or its Equivalent.

N. 1.—The simple Ablative without an attribute is confined to a few substantives which have acquired adverbial force.

**401.** The Means or Instrument is put in the Ablative *without a preposition*. The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative *with the preposition ab* (a). The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative *with per*.

**402.** The Standard of Measure is put in the Ablative with verbs of Measurement and Judgment.

**408.** The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with verbs of Emotion.

N. 6.—The use of the Ablative for the *external* cause is not common in the early and classical period, except in certain formulae; but it becomes common later.

**410.** N. 4.—The impersonal use of the Abl. Abs. is found not unfrequently in early Latin and CICERO, rarely in CÆSAR and SALLUST. CICERO introduces a clause with *ut*, SALLUST the Infinitive depending upon an Abl. Abs. LIVY extends this construction greatly.

R. 3.—As a rule the Abl. Abs. can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate.

**416.** 1. *Ad* used of time refers only to the Future, and gives either a point (*ad vesperum, at evening*), an interval (*ad paucos dies, a few days hence*), or an approaching time, *towards*.

4. *Apud* is used chiefly of Persons: *at the house of, in the presence of, in the writings of, in the view of*.

17. *Penes, with = in the hands of*, is used preëminently of Persons.

**417.** 1. *A* is used of the point of departure.

9. *Prae* is used of Comparison, in the sense *in comparison with*.

**418.** 1. (a) *In* with Accusative: of Place, *into, into the midst of; of Disposition and Direction, to, towards*.

(b) **In** with Ablative: of Place, *in, on*; of Time, *within*; of Reference, *in the case of, in regard to, in the matter of*; of Condition, *in*.

423. 2. N. 2.—A large number of verbs of Will, Power, Duty, Habit, etc., take the Infinitive as an Object, but many of these also take **ut**, and the distinction in meaning should be clearly observed. Such is **persuadere**.

427. N. 5.—The Gerundives from **utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor** have the personal construction, but usually only in the Oblique cases.

428. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement.

R. 2.—The Gen. of the Gerund and Gerundive is used very commonly with **causa**, less often with **gratia**, to express Design.

435. The Accusative Supine is used chiefly after verbs of Motion to express Design.

436. The Ablative Supine is used chiefly with Adjectives as the Ablative of Respect or Specification. It never takes an object.

437. The Participle may be used as a substantive, but even then retains something of the predicate nature.

N. 1.—The use as a substantive is rare in classical prose.

N. 2.—The use of an attributive or predicative Perfect Participle with a substantive is a growth in Latin. Cicero employs only the prepositions **ante, de, in, post, praeter**. The usage is much extended later.

444. 1. **Ne** is the negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive.

2. **Ne** is continued by **neve** or **neu**.

457. 1. **An, or**, belongs to the second part of a Disjunctive question.

2. Especially to be noted in connection with **an** are the phrases **nescio an, haud scio an, I do not know but; dubito an, I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think, etc.** Negative particles added to these give a mild negation.

460. 1. (b) **Si, whether**, is used after verbs and sentences implying trial.

465. Subjunctive questions which expect Imperative answers are put chiefly in the First Person, when the question is *deliberative*.

466. Rhetorical Questions which anticipate a potential answer in the negative are put in the Subjunctive.

467. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive. This Subjunctive may represent the Indicative or may be original.

R. 2.—The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative **quis** in most of its forms, hence they are to be carefully distinguished in dependent sentences.



468. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause by anticipation (*Prolepsis*).

469. Contrary to our idiom, the Interrogative is often used in participial clauses.

470. Final sentences are used in questions more freely than in English.

471. (a) *Yes* is represented :

1. By **sane, sane quidem, etiam, vero, ita, omnino, certe, certo, admodum**, etc.
2. By **censeo, scilicet**.
3. By repeating the emphatic word with or without confirmatory particles.

481. 1. When **multus, many**, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles.

2. Several subjects or objects standing in the same relation either take **et** throughout or omit it throughout.

482. Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

4. Comparative : **ut—ita, as—so**.

5. Adversative : **non modo, non solum, non tantum, not only ; sed, sed etiam, sed—quoque, verum etiam, but even, but also**.

R. 1. Instead of **non modo (solum) non—sed ne—quidem**, the latter **non** is generally omitted when the two negative clauses *have a verb in common*.

R. 2.—**Nedum, not** (to speak of) *yet, much less*, is used either with or without a verb in the Subjunctive.

487. **Vero, of a truth**, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement.

488. **At** introduces *startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes*, often by way of quotation.

493. 1. **Aut, or**, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution.

2. **Aut** is often corrective = *or at least, at most, rather*.

3. **Aut—aut, either—or**.

494. 1. **Vel** (literally, *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **etiam, even ; potius, rather**.

2. **Vel—vel, either—or** (whether—or).

511. R. 1.—The treatment of the Historical Present according to its sense (past) is the rule in classical Latin.

R. 3.—The Pure Perfect is usually treated as a Historical Perfect in the matter of sequence.

513. In Consecutive Sentences the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result.



N. 3.—In relative sentences of coincident action, with causal coloring, either the coincidence is retained or a principal clause in the Past is followed by the Imperfect Subjunctive.

518. When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive, the sequence is historical if either the Infinitive or its governing verb is Past; if both are Present, the sequence is primary.

521. The Reflexive is used in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation.

R. 1.—Sentences of Tendency and Result have forms of **is**, when the subject is not the same as that of the leading verb; otherwise the Reflexive.

R. 5.—Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view.

525. 1. **Quod** is used to introduce explanatory clauses after verbs of Adding and Dropping, and after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb.

527. R. 2.—Verbs of Intellectual Representation are those of Thinking, Remembering, Belief and Opinion, Expectation, Trust and Hope.

532. Verbs of Will and Desire take a Dependent Accusative and Infinitive.

N. 1.—**Impero** in model prose takes only the Infinitive passive or deponent.

N. 2.—After **iubeo**, *I bid*, and **veto**, *I forbid*, the Infinitive Active can be used without a subject.

541. Causal sentences with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, and **quando** take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (partial or total).

N. 2.—A rejected reason if untrue is introduced by **non quod** (rarely **non quia**) with the Subjunctive. If true, the Indicative *may* be used. The corresponding affirmative is given by **sed quod** or **sed quia** with the Indicative.

543. 1. Sentences of Design and Tendency both contemplate the end—the one as an aim, the other as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle **ut**.

3. They differ in the tenses employed, for Final sentences take as a rule only the Present and Imperfect, while Consecutive may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive. The Final Sentences take the Optative, the Consecutive the Potential. Hence the difference in Negative **ut** and **ut non**, **ne quis** and **ut nemo**, **ne ullus** and **ut nullus**, etc.

545. Pure Final Sentences are introduced by :

1. **Ut** (**uti**), (*how*) *that*, and other relative pronouns and adverbs.

2. **Quo** = **ut eo**, *that thereby*, with comparatives, *that the . . .*—.

3. **Ne**, *that not*, *lest*, continued by **neve**, **neu**.

L. 1.—**Ut ne** is found for **ne** with apparently no difference in meaning. **Quo** without comparative is rare.

R. 2.—**Ut non** is used when a particular word is negated.

R. 3.—**Ut** and **ne** are used parenthetically at all periods, depending on a suppressed verb of Saying or the like.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring.

R. 1.—When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Infinitive must be used. The English translation is *that* and the Indicative.

548. Verbs and phrases signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware may take **ne** with the Subj., if they are not negated.

N. 1.—**Per aliquem stare** is construed with **ne**, but more often with **quominus**.

N. 3.—**Cavere** followed by **ut** means *to be sure to*; by **ne** or **ut ne**, *to see to it that not*; by **ne**, *to take precautions against*.

549. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take **quominus**, with the Subjunctive.

550. Verbs of Fear are followed by **ne**, *lest*, **ut** (**ne non**), *that*, with any tense of the Subjunctive.

N. 5.—(a) With the Infinitive, verbs of Fear are verbs of (negative)

Will. (b) With the Accusative and Infinitive, verbs of Fear are verbs of Thinking or Perception.

552. R. 1.—Notice especially the impersonal **tantum abest**, **afuit** (rarely **aberat**)—**ut—ut**.

556. **Quin**, equivalent to **ut non**, may be used after any negative sentence. Here it may often be translated '*without*.'

Note the combinations (**facere**) **non possum quin**, **nihil abesse quin**, *etc.*

562. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping). The translation often indicates the spectator.

567. When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect, the subsequent action in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

570. **Dum**, *while*, *while yet*, *during*, takes the Present Indicative after all tenses.

N. 1.—**Dum** is the only temporal conjunction of limit that is loose enough in its formation to serve for partial coextension. The Present, after it, always connotes continuance, and the construction becomes practically a periphrasis for a missing Present participle.

572. R. 2.—**Verba expectandi** take the Subjunctive with **dum**, **donec**, and

**quoad** when Suspense and Design are involved. But they have also other constructions, as **ut**, **si**, **quin**, but not the Infinitive.

**580. Cum**, *when*, is used with all tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations.

R. 1.—**Fuit cum** commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relations and takes the Subjunctive.

R. 2.—**Memini cum** takes the Indicative. But **audire cum** takes the Subjunctive parallel with the participle.

**582.** When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, **cum** is almost equivalent to its kindred relative **quod**, *in that*.

**585.** Historical **cum**, *when (as)*, is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action, to characterize the temporal circumstances under which an action took place.

R.—**Cum** with the Subjunctive is a close equivalent to the participle, and often serves to supply its absence.

**591. (a) Si non** is the rule:

1. When the position of the same verb precedes.
2. When the condition is Concessive; in this case the principal clause often contains an adversative particle.

(b) **Nisi** is the rule:

1. When an exception or restriction is added to the leading statement.
2. Especially after negatives.

R. 2.—**Nisi** is often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the signification of *but, except, besides, only*.

**597. R. 3 (a).**—The Indicative is the regular construction in the Apodosis of the Unreal Condition with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity; so with the active and passive Periphrastic. But when the Possibility, etc., is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used.

R. 5 (a).—When the Apodosis of an Unreal Condition is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect is turned into the Periphrastic Perfect Subjunctive.

**598.** Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign.

**601. R. 1.**—**Si** itself is often concessive, and the addition of **et**, **etiam**, and **tamen** serves merely to fix the idea.

**602. Ut si, ac si, quasi, quam si, tamquam, tamquam si, velut, velut si, as if**, are followed by the Subjunctive. The Tense follows the rule of sequence.

**605. Quamquam** in the best authors is construed with the Indicative.

R. 1.—The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes found.



R. 2.—**Quamquam** is often used like **etsi**, but more frequently at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English *and yet, although, however*, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence.

609. The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

610. The Latin language uses the relative construction, particularly in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with conjunctions and other relatives.

R. 1.—The awkwardness or impossibility of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract substantive.

611. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative pronouns in all their forms : adjective, substantive, and adverbial.

R. 1.—The Relative adverbs of Place and their correlatives may be used instead of a preposition with a Relative; particularly **unde** = **ab eo**; less often **ibi** = **in eo**, **ubi** = **in quo**, *etc.*

R. 2.—The Relative is not to be confounded with the Dependent Interrogative sentence.

614. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

R. 1.—The Relative agrees with the Person of the true antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes.

R. 2.—When the Relative refers to a sentence, **id quod**, *that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically). So also **quae res**, or simple **quod**, and (referring to a simple substantive) **is qui**, *etc.*

616. 1. The antecedent substantive is often incorporated into the Relative clause.

N. 2.—Instead of a principal clause followed by a consecutive clause, the structure is sometimes reversed. What would have been the dependent clause becomes the principal clause, and an incorporated explanatory Relative takes the place of the Demonstrative.

2. An appositional substantive from which a Relative clause depends is regularly incorporated into the Relative clause.

3. Adjectives, especially superlatives, are sometimes transferred from the substantive in the principal clause and made to agree with the Relative in the Relative clause.

N. 2.—Instead of a Principal clause followed by a Consecutive clause, the structure is sometimes reversed and an incorporated explanatory Relative clause takes the place of the Demonstrative.

624. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood.



R.—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a substantive, with this difference: that the substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative clause, a transient relation.

**626.** *Qui* with the Indicative (= *is enim*, *for he*) often approaches *quod*, in *that*.

N. 1.—This causal sense is heightened by *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*.

**627.** The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses where it would be used in a simple sentence.

R. 1.—Especially to be noted is the Subjunctive in restrictive phrases, principally *quod sciam*.

**629.** Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive.

R.—The Indicative is used (*a*) in mere circumlocutions (particularly in Consecutive sentences); (*b*) of individual facts.

**630.** Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design when *qui* = *ut is*.

**631.** Potential Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency :

1. With a definite antecedent, when the character is emphasized; regularly after *idoneus*, *aptus*, *dignus*, *indignus*; *is*, *talis*, *eiusmodi*, *tantus*, *etc.*; *unus* and *solus*.

2. With an indefinite antecedent; so especially after negatives of all kinds, interrogatives, and many combinations.

3. After comparatives with *quam*.

**635.** The Accusative and Infinitive may be used in *Oratio Obliqua* after a Relative, when the Relative is to be resolved into a coördinating conjunction and the demonstrative.

**636.** Relative sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions *only when they are actually coördinate*.

N. 2.—(*a*) The Relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions, except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents a *following* demonstrative or anticipates it.

**637.** The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle.

**642.** Correlative sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives :—

1. Adjective: *tot*—*quot* (*as (so) many as*), *tantus*—*quantus* (*as (so) great as*), *talis*—*qualis* (*such as*), *idem*—*qui* (*the same as*).

2. Adverbial: *tam*—*quam* (*as (so) much as*), *totiens(es)*—*quotiens(es)* (*as often as*), *ita*, *sic*—*ut*, *uti* (*as (so) as*).

R. 2.—(*a*) *The more—the more* may be translated by *quo* (*quisque*)—*eo* and the like, with the comparatives; but usually by *ut* (*quisque*), *quam*—*ita*, *tam*, with the superlative, especially when the subject is indefinite.

(b) When the predicate is the same, one member often coalesces with the other.

R. 4.—**Ut** and **pro eo ut** are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense : *so far as, inasmuch as*.

643. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take **atque** and **ac**.

N. 3.—**Alius** and **secus** have **quam** occasionally at all periods.

644. R. 3.—(a) When two clauses are compared by **potius**, *rather, prius, before, citius, quicker, sooner*, the second clause is put in the Pr. or Impf. Subjv. with or (in CICERO regularly) without **ut**. (b) If the leading clause is in the Infin., the dependent clause *may be* in the Infin. likewise, and this is the regular construction in classical Latin when the Infin. follows a verb of Will and Desire.

648. The thoughts of the narrator, as reported by the narrator, are called **Oratio Recta**, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or **Oratio Obliqua**, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

R. 2.—**Inquam**, *quoth I*, is used in citing **Oratio Recta** : **aio**, *I say*, generally in **Oratio Obliqua**. **Inquam** is always parenthetic ; **aio** may or may not be parenthetic.

649. N. 2.—**Oratio Obliqua** often comes in without any formal notice, and the governing verb has often to be supplied from the context.

651. In **Oratio Obliqua** Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, inasmuch as the verb of Saying involves the verb of Asking.

R. 1.—Indicative Rhetorical Questions, being substantially statements, are transferred from the Indic. of **O. R.** to the Acc. and Inf. of **O. O.** when they are in the First and Third Persons. The Second Person goes into the Subjunctive.

655. Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative clauses follow the general laws for Subordinate clauses in **Oratio Obliqua**.

R. 1.—Coördinate clauses are put in the Accusative and Infinitive.

R. 2.—Relative clauses are put in the Indicative : (a) in mere circumlocutions ; (b) in explanations of the narrator.

R. 3.—**Dum** with the Indicative is often retained as a mere circumlocution.

664. Participles are used in Latin to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance, Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession.

R. 1.—It is sometimes convenient to translate a participial sentence by a coördinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coördinate, and such clauses are never equivalents.

R. 2.—A common translation of the Participle is an abstract substantive.

**665.** Participles may represent Time When.

**666.** Participles may represent Cause Why.

**667.** Participles may represent Condition and Concession.

**670.** In later Latin the Future Participle (active) is used to represent subordinate relations :

1. Time When; 2. Cause Why; 3. Purpose (usually after a verb of Motion); 4. Condition and Concession.

**677.** Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb (before it when it ends a sentence), and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

R. 1.—**Fere, paene, prope** usually follow.

R. 2.—Negatives always precede.

**678.** R. 5.—Monosyllabic prepositions sometimes append the enclitics, but usually the enclitics join the dependent substantive.

**682.** When pairs are contrasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but often in inverse order. The employment of the same order is called *Anaphora*; the inverse order is called *Chiasmus*.

**698.** *Hendiadys* consists in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive Genitive.

**700.** *Litotes*, or *Understatement*, is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the negative.





## ADVERTISEMENTS



# LATIN

## LATIN GRAMMAR

- Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. School edition. 340 pages. 90 cents.  
Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. Complete. 560 pages. \$1.25.  
Jenks's Latin Word Formation. 86 pages. 50 cents.

## BEGINNERS' BOOKS

- Bain's First Latin Book. Revised. 420 pages. 90 cents.  
Barss's Beginning Latin. 331 pages. \$1.00.  
D'Ooge's Colloquia Latina. 81 pages. 25 cents.  
Moulton's Introductory Latin. Revised. 278 pages. \$1.00.  
Smith's Elements of Latin. 361 pages. \$1.00.

## CAESAR

- Dotey's Latin Exercise Books on Caesar's Gallic War, Book I, 25 cents; Books II, III and IV, each, 25 cents.  
Perrin's Caesar's Civil War, with Vocabulary. 340 pages. \$1.00.  
Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War, Books I, II, III, and IV. Contains Text, Notes, Grammatical Appendix and Vocabulary. 479 pages. \$1.00.  
Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War. Complete. 604 pages. \$1.25.  
Towle & Jenks's Caesar for Sight Reading. 144 pages. 60 cents.

## CICERO

- Tunstall's Six Orations of Cicero. Four Catilines, Manilian Law, Archias. \$1.00.  
Tunstall's Cicero's Orations. Same as above, with Verres, Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius and Ninth Philippic. 616 pages. \$1.25.

## LATIN COMPOSITION

- Barss's Writing Latin, Book I. Based on Caesar. 144 pages. 50 cents.  
Barss's Writing Latin, Book II. Based on Caesar and Cicero. 168 pages. 75 cents.  
Daniels's Latin Drill and Composition. 125 pages. 40 cents.

## OVID

- Anderson's Selections from Ovid, with Vocabulary. 264 pages. \$1.00.

## FOR COLLEGE WORK

- Carter's Roman Elegiac Poets. 330 pages. \$1.25.  
Bowen's Cicero's De Amicitia. 151 pages. 75 cents.  
Bowen's Cicero's De Senectute. 164 pages. 75 cents.  
Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. Complete. 560 pages. \$1.20.  
Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Composition. 201 pages. 75 cents.  
Lease's Livy, Books I, XXI and XXII. 510 pages. \$1.25.  
Moore's Prose Exercises. Revised. 80 pages. 50 cents.  
Penick's Sallust's Catiline. With vocabulary. 191 pages. \$1.00.  
Rockwood's Cicero's De Officiis. 183 pages. \$1.00.  
Sihler's Cicero's Second Philippic. 157 pages. \$1.00.  
Wilson's Juvenal. 372 pages. \$1.25.

D. C. HEATH & CO., Publishers

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

# Higher English

Beowulf — A metrical translation by J. L. Hall. Cloth . . .	.75
Paper . . . . .	\$ .30
Bowen's Historical Study of the O-Vowel . . . . .	1.25
Bray's History of English Critical Terms . . . . .	1.00
A vocabulary of 1400 critical terms used in literature and art, with critical and historical data for their study.	
Bronson's History of American Literature . . . . .	1.00
"No other manual of American literature says so much so well in so little space."	
Coleridge's Principles of Criticism. From the <i>Biographia Literaria</i> . . . . .	.75
Cook's The Bible and English Prose Style . . . . .	.45
Corson's Introduction to Browning, with 33 poems . . . . .	1.10
Corson's Introduction to Shakespeare . . . . .	1.10
Crawshaw's The Making of English Literature . . . . .	1.30
An interpretative and historical guide for students.	
Cynewulf's Juliana, with notes and vocabulary . . . . .	.40
Davidson's Prolegomena to Tennyson's In Memoriam . . . . .	.60
A critical analysis with an index of the poem.	
Duncan, Beck and Graves's Prose Specimens . . . . .	1.00
Selections illustrating description, narration, exposition, and argumentation.	
DeQuincey's Confessions of an Opium Eater . . . . .	.50
Espenshade's Essentials of Composition and Rhetoric. Revised . . . . .	1.10
Hooker's Study Book in English Literature . . . . .	1.00
Covering the chief authors from Chaucer to the close of the romantic period.	
Hudson's The Study of Literature . . . . .	1.25
Judith. Introduction, notes, and glossary by Cook . . . . .	.40
Kluge and Lutz's English Etymology . . . . .	.75
A select glossary for use in the study of historical grammar.	
MacEwan's The Essentials of Argumentation . . . . .	1.25
A systematic discussion of principles, with illustrative extracts.	
Meiklejohn's English Language: Grammar, History, Literature. . . . .	1.25
A compendious course of exceptional worth.	
Moulton's Short Introduction to the Literature of the Bible . . . . .	1.00
Moulton's Literary Study of the Bible . . . . .	2.00
An account of the leading forms of literature represented.	
O'Connor's Rhetoric and Oratory . . . . .	1.20
Payne's English in American Universities . . . . .	.75
Simonds's Sir Thomas Wyatt and his Poems . . . . .	.50
Slater's Freshman Rhetoric . . . . .	1.10
Smith's The Writing of the Short Story . . . . .	.25
Webster's Speeches: nine of the greatest . . . . .	.80
Whitcomb's The Study of a Novel . . . . .	1.25
Analytic and synthetic work for college classes.	
Woolley's Mechanics of Writing . . . . .	1.00
Treats exhaustively the paragraph and the <i>rationale</i> of punctuation.	
Wordsworth's Prefaces and Essays on Poetry . . . . .	.60

See also our list of books of *Dramatic Literature, English Poetry, and the Belles-Lettres Series*

D. C. HEATH & CO., Boston, New York, Chicago







LaL.Gr  
G4685kx.2

182219  
Gildersleeve, Basil Lanneau & Lodge, Gonzalez  
Latin composition. Rev.ed.

**University of Toronto  
Library**

---

**DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET**

---

Acme Library Card Pocket  
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED



